IPC DEFINITION PROJECTS/
PROJETS DE DÉFINITION DE LA CIB

ELECTRICAL FIELD/
DOMAINE DE L'ÉLECTRICITÉ

IPC/D 086
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 04.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **WG** **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **H04M** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :**
RAPPORTEUR : **SE**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **E** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Initial proposal			14.07.2006
2	Comments	Observations	US	07.08.2006
3	Comments	Observations	GB	29.09.2006
4	Comments	Observations	DE	29.09.2006
5	Comments	Observations	JP	24.10.2006
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	SE	03.04.2007
7	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	SE	03.04.2007
8	Comments	Observations	US	03.05.2007
9	Comments	Observations	DE	29.05.2007
10	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	06.07.2007
11	Comments	Observations	EP	09.11.2007
12	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	SE	19.11.2007
13	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	SE	19.11.2007
14	Comments	Observations	JP	20.11.2007
15	Comments	Observations	DE	22.11.2007
16	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail		07.03.2008
17	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	SE	07.04.2008

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
18	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	SE	07.04.2008
19	Comments	Observations	EP	29.04.2008
20	Comments	Observations	JP	16.05.2008
21	Comments	Observations	US	19.05.2008
22	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	26.06.2008
23	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	SE	03.11.2008
24	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	SE	03.11.2008
25	Comments	Observations	JP	12.11.2008
26	Comments	Observations	GB	18.11.2008
27	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	13.01.2009
28	Comments	Observations	EP	13.02.2009
29	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	SE	04.03.2009
30	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	SE	04.03.2009
31	Proposal removal of non-limiting references	Proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs	SE	04.03.2009
32	Comments	Observations	JP	20.04.2009
33	Comments	Observations	EP	04.06.2009

ANNEX 27

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2

Project D 086 (electrical) – The Working Group invited a further round of comments, to be followed by a new rapporteur report. The Rapporteur was invited to submit a proposal for the treatment of the references removed from the scheme during project M 103.

Projet D 086 (électricité) – le groupe de travail a demandé une nouvelle série d'observations, qui seraient suivies d'un nouveau rapport du rapporteur. Le rapporteur a été invité à présenter une proposition de traitement des renvois supprimés dans la classification dans le cadre du projet M 103.

Swedish Patent and Registration Office

IPC Definition Project D086, subclass H04M **03-03-2009**

Rapporteur report

R would like to thank **EP** (annex 28), **JP** (annex 25) and **GB** (annex 26) for their comments during this round.

In addition to the proposal, **R** has also submitted a list of references for H04M as requested in annex 27. In project M103 it was decided which references that were considered to be informative and which were limiting. **R** has arranged them in a list for an easier overview. All references (both limiting and informative) pertaining to the subclass and main groups have been added to the definition during this project. References which merely belong to a subgroup have not been added to the definition proposal, and references that previously have been stated under a main group, although they only belong to one subgroup, have been deleted. The references belonging to a single subgroup will be taken care of by WIPO when the definition is published.

References that were previously in the definition proposal, in annex 24, which now have been removed are:
Under H04M 1/00: B65H 75/34 (relates to H04M 1/15), H02G 11/00 (relates to H04M 1/18), E04H 1/14 (relates to H04M 1/18), G01R (relates to H04M 1/24), H04R 29/00 (relates to H04M 1/24), H04M 11/06 (relates to H04M 1/253), H03M 11/00 (relates to H04M 1/26), H04B 1/00 (relates to H04M 1/58), H04L 9/32 (relates to H04M 1/66) and H04B 3/38 (relates to H04M 1/78).
Under H04M 11/00: H04H (relates to H04M 11/08).

R have also made some other corrections concerning references since **R** discovered that references that were listed as limiting references in the scheme were listed under informative references in the definition proposal in annex 24.
H04M: G08B and G08C are listed in the proposal as informative references. According to the scheme the limiting references should be G08 and H04W and these have been added to the proposal.
H04M 1/00: H04W 88/00 are listed in the proposal in annex 24 as informative references but has now been added as a limiting reference instead.

The **R** has made a few changes in the proposal. For example, under the “Definition statement” in H04M regarding the long list of subject matters that this subclass covers. The list has been amended by adding some of the subject matters as points below one of the other subject matters in an attempt to make the paragraphs easier to read.

In the proposal of annex 24, several abbreviations and keywords were listed under “glossary of terms” in H04M even though they are not included in this scheme. **R** has therefore moved these abbreviations and keywords to “Synonyms and keywords” where they belong.

R has added two abbreviations, SPIT and SPAM, to the list under “Synonyms and keywords” in H04M, since they are listed under “this subclass covers” but are not further explained in the proposal in annex 24.

Remarks made by **EP**, **JP** and **GB**:

1. Regarding paragraph three under “Relationship between larger subject matter areas” in H04M. **EP** states in annex 28 that SPIT and SPAM are not to be classified in H04M 1/663 but rather in H04M 3/436. **R** has discussed this with some experts in the area and they agree with **EP**:s arguments and **R** has therefore changed the last line to “SPIT and SPAM prevention in VoIP should be classified in H04M 3/436”.

2. Regarding “Glossary of terms” in H04M. **GB** suggests, in annex 26, to amend the description of “subscriber”. **EP** agrees with **GB** and since **R** also agrees the amendment has been made.

3. Regarding “Glossary of terms” in H04M. **EP** suggests, in annex 28, to add the keyword “Exchange” to the list which **R** has done.

4. Regarding “Synonyms and keywords” in H04M. **EP** suggests, in annex 28, to add a further explaining remark regarding CTI. **R** does not see a reason to why this should not be added and the remark has thus been added.

5. Regarding “Definition statement” in H04M 1/00. **EP** suggests, in annex 28, to add three explanations to the list. **R** agrees with EP that these three remarks should be added, but **R** has changed the second remark to “substation equipment including speech amplifiers” instead of “Devices ... amplifiers” for better correspondence with the scheme.

6. Regarding “Informative references” in H04M 1/00. **EP** suggest, in annex 28, to correct the references for Hybrid circuits and Repeater circuits. These references have been removed from the definition proposal since they only relate to a specific group. **R** would, although, like to invite others to comment on the changes suggested by **EP**, to ensure that the references are correct. The suggestion is “Hybrid circuits, H04B 1/58, (not /00 and omit "for... operation")” and “Repeater circuits, H04B 3/58, (not 3/38)”.

7. Regarding “Informative references” in H04M 1/00. **EP** propose, in annex 28, to change "Mobile substation equipment in mobile radio system" into "Terminal device in mobile radio system" for H04W 88/00. **R** agrees with **EP** and the change has been made. Since H04W is a limiting reference this reference have been moved to “this group does not cover”.

8. Regarding “Definition statement” in H04M 3/00. **EP** suggest, in annex 28, to combine the first, third and fourth paragraph in the proposal, annex 24, to come to a more clear expression. **R** has no objections to this and the paragraphs have been changed accordingly.

9. Regarding “Relationship between large subject matter areas” in H04M 3/00. **EP** suggests, in annex 28, to add two more sentences for further clarification of other areas. **R** has no objection to this change and the sentences have been added.

10. Regarding “References relevant to classification in this group” in H04M 3/00. **EP** suggests, in annex 28, to add “Communication control in data networks characterised by a protocol H04L 29/06” under “this group does not cover”. This means that it is a

limiting reference which **R** not so sure about. Perhaps it would be better if it was given as an informative reference?

11. Regarding "Definition statement" in H04M 7/00. **JP** suggests, in annex 25, to add "at (switching) centres". **EP** is reluctant, in annex 28, to concur with the suggestion since it is not completely understood how said feature is to be construed. **EP** also raises the questions what is the difference between "interworking" and "interworking at switching centres?" and if gateways are excluded from H04M 7/00 it remains unclear what type of interworking is supposed to be classified in H04M 7/00? **R:s** experts agree with **EP** and the suggestion has therefore not been added to the proposal.

12. Regarding "Definition statement" in H04M 15/00. **EP** suggests, in annex 28, to add six statements under "this group covers". **R** agrees and the statements have been added accordingly with a few amendments in the text.

13. Regarding "references relevant to classification in this group" in H04M 15/00. **EP** propose, in annex 28, to add two references to H04W4/24 and H04W 4/26 which are examples of places where the subject matter of H04M 15/00 is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose or incorporated in a lager system. **R** has no objections to this and the references have been added accordingly.

14. Regarding "informative references" in H04M 15/00. **EP** suggests, in annex 28, to add two informative references, H04L 12/14 and G06Q30/00. **R** does not see a reason to why these references could not be added and hence, **R** has added them in the proposal.

15. Regarding "definition statement" in H04M 17/00. **EP** suggests, in annex 28, to add two paragraphs under "this group covers". **R** agrees and the paragraphs are added in the proposal.

16. Regarding "References relevant to classification in this group" in H04M 17/00. **EP** suggests, in annex 28, to add two references which are examples of places where the subject matter of H04M 17/00 is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose or incorporated in a lager system. **R** does not see a reason to why these references could not be added and hence, **R** has added them in the proposal.

17. Regarding "Informative references" in H04M 17/00. **EP** suggests, in annex 28, to add a reference to H04L 12/14. **R** has added the reference. **EP** also suggests that G07F and H04M 1/675 should be moved from "reference relevant… group" to "informative references". **R** has looked at the list which contains the references in the scheme and there it is stated that G07F is an informative reference, which therefore should be moved, but H04M 1/675 is listed as a limiting reference and the reference should hence remain under "reference … group".

As you can see **R** still have some concerns about some of the proposed changes, see especially items number 6, 10 and 11 above, and the **R** would like to have some more comments regarding these items.

R discovered that "Definition statement" in H04M 11/00 states: *Telephonic communication systems adapted for combination with other electrical systems e.g. combinations with application servers, physical implementation of xDSL-systems (splitters, modems, DSLAMs) (H04M 11/06)".* **R** does not believe that the statement should include a reference, H04M 11/06, to a subgroup relating to the main group. By viewing earlier

discussion (see annex 4, 6, 9, 11, 12, 13 and 15) the intention was to make a clear distinction between H04M 11/06 and H04L. H04M 11/06 only covers such systems which not only use but implement xDSL systems. **R** suggest that the reference is removed and that the keywords “splitters”, “modem” and “DSLAMs” also are removed since they are examples of examples. **R** has made this change in the proposal but is open to other suggestions on how to solve this matter.

Sofia Sjögren

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project **SE** Rapporteur Proposal	Project: D086 Subclass: H04M Date : 4/3/09

Title - H04M

Telephonic Communication

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Telecommunication systems including subscriber equipment and exchanges, e.g.

- **Interconnection arrangements between switching centres,**
- **Interconnection arrangements not involving centralized switching,**
- **Metering arrangements,**
- **Time-controlling arrangements,**
- **Time-indicating arrangements,**
- **Party line systems,**
- **Prepayment telephone systems,**
- **Current supply arrangements for telephone systems,**
- **Computer telephony integration (CTI),**
- **SPIT and SPAM prevention in telephony;**

Telephonic communication systems combined with other electrical systems;

Testing arrangements peculiar to telephonic communication systems;

Relationship between large subject matter areas

With regard to mobile telephony, H04M covers communication systems using wireless extensions, i.e. wireless links without selective communication, e.g. cordless telephones, which are covered by group H04M 1/72, whereas H04W covers communication networks for selectively establishing one or a plurality of wireless communication links between a desired number of users or between users and network equipments, for the purpose of transferring information via these wireless communication links.

With regard to VoIP (Voice over Internet Protocol), voice is considered in this context to be a specific form of "digital information". Since the Internet Protocol and IP networks are classified in H04L (H04L 12/00, Data switching networks and H04L 29/02, Communication control), the transmission of voice over IP networks should be classified in H04L.

When VoIP is used to emulate or simulate services, the service, as presented to the user, is still classified in H04M. Any implementation details are however classified in H04L, for example SPIT and SPAM prevention in VoIP should be classified in H04M ~~1/663~~3/436.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Signalling	G08
Wireless communication networks	H04W

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Counting mechanisms	G06M
Multiplex transmission between switching centres	H04J
Selecting	H04Q
Transducers	H04R
Information storage based on relative movement between record carrier and transducer	G11B

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

Subscriber	*General term for a user of terminal equipment, e.g. for the user of a telephone set, or for any equipment used by subscribers, e.g. telephones for public use.*
Substation	Subscriber or monitoring equipment which may connect a single subscriber to a line without choice as to subscriber.
Satellite	A kind of exchange the operation of which depends upon control signals received from a supervisory exchange.
Switching centres	Include exchanges and satellites.
Exchange	Synonym for telephone switch
Voice mail system	A centralized system for managing telephone messages for a large group of users.

Formatted: English U.K.

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations and keywords are often used:

PSTN	Public Switched Telephony Network.
ISDN	Integrated Services Digital Network.
ISUP	ISDN User Part.
SIP	Session Initiation Protocol.
H.323	A standard protocol used for Packet-Based Multimedia Communications Systems.
CTI	Computer telephony integration. A technology that allows interactions on a telephone and a computer to be integrated or co-ordinated. Common application interfaces and protocols for monitoring and controlling calls comprise Computer Supported Telecommunications Applications, CSTA, Java Telephony Application Programming Interface, JTAPI, Telephony Server Application Programming Interface, TSAPI, or Telephony Application Programming Interface, TAPI.
Gatekeeper	A gatekeeper provides a number of services to terminals, gateways and devices, e.g. endpoint registration, address resolution, admission control and user authentication.
Call agent	A call agent handles specific services to users e.g. alert the called party, send and receive voice data.
IMS	IP Multimedia Subsystem. An architectural framework for delivering internet protocol, IP, multimedia to a mobile user.
Softswitch	A central device in a telephone network which connects calls from one phone line to another, e.g. control connections at the junction point between circuit and packet networks.
PBX	Private Branch Exchanges, e.g. for making connections among the internal telephones of a private organization.
xDSL	Digital Subscriber Line. A family of technologies that provides digital data transmission over the wires of a local telephone network.
Party line system	An arrangement in which two or more customers are connected directly to the same link or circuit.
SPAM	The abuse of electronic messaging systems to send unsolicited bulk messages indiscriminately.
SPIT	Spam over Internet Telephony, i.e. unwanted, automatically dialled, pre-recorded phone calls using

Voice over Internet Protocol, VoIP.

Title - H04M 1/00

Substation equipment, e.g. for use by subscribers

Definition statement

This group covers:

Substation equipment, e.g. for use by subscribers;

Constructional details of telephone sets;

Arrangements for indicating or recording called number or number of calling subscriber at the substation equipment;

Arrangements for answering calls and for recording messages and conversations at the substation equipment;

Substation extension, e.g. cordless telephones;

Arrangements for testing;

User guidance features in telephone sets;
Devices for signalling identity of wanted subscriber, e.g. telephone directories;
Substation equipment including speech amplifiers;
Arrangements for preventing unauthorized or fraudulent calling;

Relationship between large subject matter areas

Arrangements for services at the substation equipment are classified here. Arrangements for services at exchanges are classified at H04M 3/00.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Subscriber services or facilities provided at exchanges	H04M 3/00
Prepayment telephone coin boxes	H04M 17/00
Current supply arrangements	H04M 19/08
Terminal devices in mobile radio systems	H04W 88/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

In-vehicle arrangements for holding or mounting articles, e.g. for telephones, radios and TV sets	B60R 11/02
~~Devices specially adapted or mounted for storing and repeatedly~~	~~B65H 75/34~~

~~paying-out and restoring lengths of material~~	
~~Telephone cabinets~~	~~E04H 1/14~~
~~Measuring electric values~~	~~G01R~~
Arrangements for converting discrete items of information into a coded form, e.g. keyboards	G06F 3/023
Interaction techniques for graphical user interfaces between user and computer	G06F 3/048
Digital output to displays?	G06F 3/14
Housing or supporting of instruments or other apparatus	G12B 9/00
Keyboard switches in general	H01H 13/70, H03K 17/94
~~Coding in connection with keyboards or like devices in general~~	~~H03M 11/00~~
~~Hybrid circuits for carrier-frequency operation~~	~~H04B 1/00~~
~~Repeater circuits~~	~~H04B 3/38~~
~~Verifying user identity or authority in secret or secure digital communications~~	~~H04L 9/32~~
~~Simultaneous speech and data transmission~~	~~H04M 11/06~~
~~Mobile substation equipment in mobile radio system~~	~~H04~~
~~Details of transducers in general~~	~~H04R 1/00~~
~~Testing transducers~~	~~H04R 29/00~~
Casing, cabinets or drawers for electric apparatus	H05K 5/00

Formatted: Font color: Turquoise

Formatted: Font color: Turquoise

Formatted: Font: (Default) Helvetica

Formatted: Normal

Formatted: Font color: Turquoise

Title - H04M 3/00

Automatic or semi-automatic exchanges

Definition statement

This group covers:

Telephonic communication services, in particular supplementary services specifically adapted for telephonic communication provided by networks comprising any type of switching devices, such as telephone exchanges, telephone switches, softswitches, call agents or and call state control function or control protocols, such as ISDN User part (ISUP), H.323 and SIP;

Telephone exchanges or telephone switches, in particular digital switches which work by connecting two or more digital circuits together, according to a dialed telephone number. This main group covers both switches of Public Switched Telephone Networks, PSTN, and Private Branch Exchanges, PBX;

Application servers for information services, call distribution and queuing services, messaging services and conference services;

Arrangements for providing information services, such as Interactive Voice Response Systems, Voice Portals or Voice Browsers;

Centralised arrangements for answering requiring operator intervention (also referred to as a call centers), usually employing call queuing and call distribution;

Centralised arrangements for recording messages for absent or busy subscribers (also referred to as Voice Mail Systems);

Arrangements for connecting several subscribers to a common circuit (also referred to as Conference Bridges);

Relationship between large subject matter areas

Services or devices which are arranged for use in substation equipment are classified in H04M 1/00, whereas services arranged for use in the exchange are classified in H04M 3/00.

Exchanges in and services specially provided for mobile radio systems are classified in H04W 4/00 - H04W 92/00.

Implementation details and protocol details of networks comprising call agents, call controllers and call state control functions and/or employing the H.323 or SIP protocol are classified in H04L 29/06.

Protocol details of call control protocols such as Q.931 and ISDN User part (ISUP) are classified in H04Q.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Switching centres and exchanges in mobile, cellular systems	H04W 84/02
Selecting arrangements	H04Q 3/00 to H04Q 5/00, H04Q 11/00, H04W
Constructional details and the switching fabric of a telephone exchange	H04Q

Title - H04M 5/00

Manual exchanges

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Substation equipment in general	H04M 1/00

Title - H04M 7/00

Interconnection arrangements between switching centres

Definition statement

This group covers:

Interconnection arrangements between switching centres;

Internet telephony and traditional circuit-switched telephony requiring interworking between the two (see in this respect also ITU-T Recommendation Y.2261, "PSTN/ISDN evolution to NGN");

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Transmission arrangements in general	H04B

~~Informative references~~

~~*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*~~

~~Transmission arrangements in general~~	~~H04B~~

~~Special rules of classification within this group~~

~~*NONE.*~~

Title - H04M 9/00

Interconnection arrangements not involving centralised switching

Title - H04M 11/00

Telephonic communication systems adapted for combination with other electrical systems

Definition statement

This group covers:

Telephonic communication systems adapted for combination with other electrical systems e.g. combinations with application servers or physical implementation of xDSL-systems.~~(splitters, modems, DSLAMs) (H04M 11/06)".~~

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

~~Alarm systems in general~~Signalling or calling systems; Order telegraphs; Alarm systems	G08B
Transmission of digital information	H04L
~~**Broadcast communication**~~	~~**H04H**~~

Formatted: Heading 2

Title - H04M 13/00

Party-line systems

Definition statement

This group covers:

Arrangements in which two or more customers are connected directly to the same link or circuit.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

~~*Informative references*~~

~~*Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:*~~

Substation equipment	H04M 1/00
Exchange equipment, automatic, manual	H04M 3/00, H04M 5/00

Metering arrangements	H04M 15/36

Title - H04M 15/00

Metering arrangements;

Time-controlling arrangements;

Time-indicating arrangements;

Definition statement

This group covers:

Metering, rating, charging, accounting, billing, invoicing and recording detailed data;

Administration, specification of accounts or notifications, e.g. special plans, group accounts, card based account or advice of charge and account limits;

VoIP billing, called party billing, calling party billing or and third party billing;

Arrangements for providing free calls or reduced rates, billing when roaming, least cost routing, bidding for cheapest communication price or dynamic tariffing;

Billing fraud detection;

Generation of statistics on called or calling numbers;

Payment of added value services which are charged to the telecommunications operator bill;

References relevant to classification in this group

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Accounting or billing specially adapted for wireless communication networks	H04W 4/24
Usage measurements specially adapted for wireless communication networks	H04W 4/26

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Charging packet based aspects	H04L 12/14
Data processing specially adapted to commerce, e.g. billing	G06Q 30/00

Title - H04M 17/00

Prepayment telephone systems

Definition statement

This group covers:

Prepayment telephone systems, for example prepayment telephone coin boxes;

Disposable prepaid sets;

Coin-freed or check freed systems;

Calling card specifications related to prepayment;

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

~~Coin-freed or like apparatus in general~~	~~G07F~~
Preventing unauthorized calling from a telephone set by inserting a coded card	H04M 1/675

Formatted: P

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Accounting or billing specially adapted for wireless communication networks	H04W 4/24
Usage measurements specially adapted for wireless communication networks	H04W 4/26

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Coin-freed or like apparatus in general	G07F
Mobile subscriber equipment	H04W 88/00
Charging arrangements in digital switching networks	H04L 12/14

Title - H04M 19/00

Current supply arrangements for telephone systems

Definition statement

This group covers:

Current supply arrangements for telephone systems

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Current supply for selection equipment	H04Q 1/28
~~**Battery saving arrangements for cordless phones**~~	~~**H04M 1/73**~~

Formatted: Heading 2

Project Number: D086 Rapporteur: SE

Task: Removal of informative references from the scheme

Table of references in subclass H04M which were identified under project M 103.
References according to Version 2009.01

Subclass: H04M Project: D 086

Place	Reference to	Category	Proposed action	Comments
H04M	G06M	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definition	Added to the subclass definition during project D 086.
H04M	G08	Limiting	None	
H04M	H02G11/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
H04M	H04J	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definition	Added to the subclass definition during project D 086.
H04M	H04Q	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definition	Added to the subclass definition during project D 086.
H04M	H04R	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definition	Added to the group definition during project D 086.
H04M	H04W	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/00	H04M 3/00	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/00	H04M 17/00	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/00	H04M 19//08	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/00	H01H 13/70	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	Added to the subclass definition during project D 086.
H04M 1/00	H03K 17/94	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	Added to the group definition during project D 086.
H04M 1/03	H04R 1/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	
H04M 1/04	H04R 1/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	
H04M 1/15	B65H 75/34	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	
H04M 1/15	H02G 11/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to	

			group definition	
H04M 1/17	H04R 1/12	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/18	H04M 1/19	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/18	E04H 1/14	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	
H04M 1/19	H04M 1/68	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/19	E04H 1/14	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/20	H04M 1/62	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/23	H04M 1/22	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/24	G01R	Informative	Remove from the scheme.	
H04M 1/24	H04R 29/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	
H04M 1/253	H04M 11/06	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	
H04M 1/26	H04M 1/66	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/26	H03M 11/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition H04M 1/00	
H04M 1/315	H04M 1/32 to H04M 1/40	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/57	H04M 5/20	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/58	H04B 1/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	
H04M 1/64	H04M 11/10	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/652	H04M 1/658	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/66	H04L 9/32	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/667	H04M 1/677	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/723	H04M 1/725	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/738	H04M 1/78	Limiting	None	
H04M 1/76	H04B	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
H04M 1/78	H04B 3/38	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	
H04M 3/02	H04Q	Limiting	None	
H04M 3/34	H04B	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add a more specific reference to H04B 3/32 in the group definition.	
H04M 3/36	G06F 17/18	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to	

			group definition	
H04M 3/38	H04Q 3/64	Limiting	None	
H04M 3/42	H04W 4/00	Limiting	None	
H04M 3/424	H04M 1/27	Limiting	None	
H04M 3/44	H04M 1/27	Limiting	None	
H04M 3/44	H04M 3/424	Limiting	None	
H04M 3/50	H04M 3/487	Limiting	None	
H04M 3/50	H04M 11/10	Limiting	None	
H04M 3/56	H04N 7/15	Limiting	None	
H04M 3/58	H04M 1/80	Limiting	None	
H04M 3/64	H04M 5/18	Limiting	None	
H04M 5/00	H04M 1/00	Limiting	None	
H04M 5/02	H01R 24/04	Limiting	None	
H04M 7/00	H04B	Limiting	None	
H04M 7/14	H04M 19/06	Limiting	None	
H04M 9/08	H04B 3/20	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	
H04M 11/02	G08	Informative	Remove from the scheme	A reference to G08B is added to the group definition H04M 11/00 during project D086.
H04M 11/04	G08	Informative	Remove from the scheme	A reference to G08B is added to the group definition H04M 11/00 during project D086.
H04M 11/06	H04L	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Added to the group definition H04M 11/00 during project D086.
H04M 11/08	H04H 20/81	Limiting	None	
H04M 11/10	G11B	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definition	Added to the subclass definition during

			since it is a general reference	project D086.
H04M 13/00	H04M 1/00	Limiting	None	
H04M 13/00	H04M 3/00	Limiting	None	
H04M 13/00	H04M 5/00	Limiting	None	
H04M 13/00	H04M 15/36	Limiting	None	
H04M 17/00	H04M 1/675	Limiting	None	
H04M 17/02	G07F	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to main group definition	Added to the main group definition during project D086.
H04M 19/00	H04Q 1/28	Limiting	None	
H04M 19/08	H04M 1/73	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definition	
H04M 19/08	H04M 19/04	Limiting	None	

JAPAN PATENT OFFICE

April 20, 2009

Project: D086 Subclass: H04M

JP Comment

JP thanks and acclaims SE Rapporteur for the enormous work done in the preparation and posting of a Rapporteur Report and revised Proposal including the adjustment of references (Annexes 29, 30, 31). JP would agree with Rapporteur's opinion and proposals except the following two points.

1. Classification of SPIT and SPAM

As is explained after No. 1. of "Remarks made by EP, etc." in the Rapporteur Report, JP noted that the very last line in the section of "Relationship between large subject matter areas" in the H04M Definitions, the following amendment was made.

"SPIT and SPAM prevention in VoIP should be classified on H04M 3/436."

This amendment was made in line with EP comments in Annexes 19 and 28.

In this connection, JP is agreeable to EP expert's view with the understanding that SPIT and SPAM prevention should be classified in H04M 3/436 when the prevention is executed by the network equipment such as application servers, but that it should be classified in H04M 1/663 when the prevention is done by users' equipments. If such an understanding is not mistaken, JP considers that the amended statement in the revised Definitions may be insufficient and that the classification in both cases would better be described so that no doubt might arise.

2. Addition of "at (switching) centres"

As is explained after No. 11 of "Remarks made by EP, etc." in the Rapporteur Report, JP proposed in Annex 25 to add "at (switching) centres" in the Definition statement for H04M 7/00 as follows.

This group also covers: Internet telephony and traditional circuit-switched telephony requiring interworking between the two <u>at (switching) centres.</u>

This is because JP considers H04M 7/00 to be the place for classifying interconnection arrangements between "plural <u>centre</u> equipments" via networks. That may mean that any invention focusing only on the protocol translation in the <u>interface</u> of one network, by collaboration of gateway and other peripheral equipments etc., might not be classified under this H04M 7/00, but would rather be classified under H04M 3/00 or H04M 11/00. JP proposed to add "at (switching) centres" in order to clarify this point, but, if Rapporteur's current description can be sufficiently interpreted as being encompassing above-mentioned meaning, then JP would not insist on the said proposal.

[END]

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: D086	Subject: Telephonic Communication	IPC range: **H04M**
Comments		04 Jun 2009

Ref: Annex 29, RR, 04-Mar-09
Annex 30, R proposal, 04-Mar-09
Annex 31, R proposal of non-limiting references, 04-Mar-09
Annex 32, JP comments, 20-Apr-09

EP thanks the Rapporteur for his efforts regarding the definition project of H04M, and basically supports its contents, but ,after discussion with EPO experts, would like two make three additional remarks:

1) EP agrees with the first point in the comment of JP of Annex 32 regarding SPIT and SPAM prevention in VoIP and agrees that both H04M 3/436 and H04M 1/663 should be allowed dependent on where prevention is executed.

2) With regard to the Definition statement of H04M11/00 EP notes that it reads "... e.g. combinations with application servers". The term "application servers" is also used in the definition statement of H04M3. However, combinations with "application servers" in the sense of H04M3 are not classified in H04M11. Consequently, this definition statement might be misunderstood.

3) With regard to the reference in the Definition statement of the H04M3/00, under this group does not cover, the reference to H04W84/02 (Switching centres and exchanges in mobile, cellular systems ==> H04W84/02) appears incorrect because this reference relates to network topologies.

Ruben de Bekker

IPC/D 124
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **JP** **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **H04H** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :**
RAPPORTEUR : **JP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **E** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	IB	29.05.2008
3	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	JP	11.06.2008
4	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	26.06.2008
5	Comments	Observations	GB	19.11.2008
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	JP	21.11.2008
7	Comments	Observations	US	25.11.2008
8	Comments	Observations	JP	26.11.2008
9	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	30.12.2008
10	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	JP	27.02.2009

IPC-AL – Definition Project **JP** Rapporteur Proposal	Project: A003 Class/subclass: H04H Date : 13/11/08

Title – H04H

Broadcast communication

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

- arrangements for broadcast or for distribution combined with broadcast.

- arrangements specially adapted for receiving broadcast information.

- arrangements for broadcast applications with a direct linkage to broadcast information or to broadcast space-time; broadcast-related systems.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Multiplex communication	H04J
Pictorial communication aspects in broadcast systems	H04N

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Transmission in general	H04B

Special rules of classification within this subclass

In this subclass, multi-aspect classification is applied, so that subject matter characterised by aspects covered by more than one of its groups in this subclass, which is considered to represent information of interest for search, may also be classified in each of those groups.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

broadcast	simultaneous distribution of identical signals to plural receiving stations. The term “broadcast” does not include distribution to receiving stations which is

	controlled by requests or responses from the receiving stations
broadcast information	all kinds of information distributed by broadcast systems
broadcast-related information	information required by services provided via broadcast systems, other than broadcast information
broadcast time	a time when particular broadcast information exists and is available
broadcast channel	a channel via which broadcast information is distributed, e.g. carrier waves, time slots, cables or wireless broadcast service areas
broadcast space	either a set of broadcast channels in which particular broadcast information exists and is available or a geographical area determined by the set of broadcast channels
broadcast space-time	space-time determined by broadcast space and broadcast time in which particular broadcast information exists and is available
broadcast system	a system which consists of transmitter, transponder and receiver for broadcast
broadcast-related system	a system which is directly affected by generation, broadcast, reception or use of broadcast information
broadcast service	a service provided by a broadcast system, i.e. distribution service of broadcast information
broadcast-related service	a service directly provided by broadcast-related systems
“A with a direct linkage to B”	“A directly affects B” or “A is directly affected by B”

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

CATV = Community Antenna Television.

EPG = Electronic Programme Guide.

FPU = Field Pickup Unit.

MATV = Master Antenna Television.

MP3 = MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3.

URL = Uniform Resource Locator.

Title – H04H 20/00

Arrangements for broadcast or for distribution combined with broadcast

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for broadcast distribution.

- arrangements for non-broadcast distribution combined with broadcast distribution.

- arrangements for broadcast distribution combined with other broadcast distribution.

Title – H04H 20/02

Arrangements for relaying broadcast information

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for a relay specially adapted for broadcast distribution or broadcast programme.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Relay systems for radio transmission in general	H04B 7/14
Repeater circuits for line transmission in general	H04B 3/36

Title – H04H 20/10

Arrangements for replacing or switching information during the broadcast or during the distribution

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the system which substitutes or switches distributed information in real-time at the time of broadcast distribution or of distribution combined with broadcast.

Title – H04H 20/12

Arrangements for monitoring, testing or troubleshooting

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Monitoring of a broadcast-related system	H04H 60/29

Title – H04H 20/14

for monitoring programmes

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the system which monitors whether a scheduled broadcast programme has been broadcast or not.

Title – H04H 20/20

Arrangements for broadcast or distribution of identical information via plural systems

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the arrangements in which the same information is distributed by plural distribution systems.

Title – H04H 20/22

Arrangements for broadcast of identical information via plural broadcast systems

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the system which broadcasts the same information by the plural broadcast systems.

Title – H04H 20/24

Arrangements for distribution of identical information via broadcast system and non-broadcast system

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the system which broadcasts the same information by broadcast system and non-broadcast system, e.g. mobile communication network.

Title – H04H 20/26

Arrangements for switching distribution systems

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the total system which selects one from transmission systems between a broadcast station and receivers considering conditions at the time of information distribution.

Title – H04H 20/28

Arrangements for simultaneous broadcast of plural pieces of information

Definition statement

This group covers:

- multiplex communication specially adapted for broadcast distribution.

Title – H04H 20/33

by plural channels

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the system which requires multiple channels to broadcast plural portions of information simultaneously.

Title – H04H 20/42

Arrangements for resource management

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the arrangement for managing resources, e.g. transmission band width, for a broadcast distribution or for a distribution combined with broadcast distribution.

Title – H04H 20/44

Arrangements characterised by circuits or components specially adapted for broadcast

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

A transmitting circuit in general	H04B 1/04
A receiving circuit or a component specially adapted for broadcast	H04H 40/27

Title – H04H 20/46

specially adapted for broadcast systems covered by groups H04H 20/53 to H04H 20/86

Definition statement

This group covers:

- a circuit or a component for broadcast distribution specially adapted for broadcast characterised by a use, a transmission system or broadcast information.

Special rules of classification within this group

The technical subject covered by this group could also be classified to one of the groups (H04H 20/53- H04H 20/86) to clarify specialty of a use, a transmission system or broadcast information.

Title – H04H 20/53

Arrangements specially adapted for specific applications, e.g. for traffic information or for mobile receivers

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the broadcast system specially adapted to a special purpose or broadcast system used in a special situation.

Title – H04H 20/55

for traffic information

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for broadcast adapted for vehicular traffic information.

Title – H04H 20/61

for local area broadcast, e.g. instore broadcast

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for broadcast within specific areas.

Title – H04H 20/65

Arrangements characterised by transmission systems for broadcast

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the system wherein a technical aspect of a broadcast transmission system strongly affects to its broadcast service.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

The system wherein a technical aspect of a non-broadcast transmission system, i.e. a transmission system other than for broadcast, strongly affects its broadcast service or broadcast-related service	H04H 60/76

Title – H04H 20/79

using downlink of the CATV systems, e.g. audio broadcast via CATV network

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements in which CATV downlink channels are used as a broadcast transmission path.

Title – H04H 20/81

combined with telephone network over which the broadcast is continuously available

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Telephonic communication in general	H04M

Title – H04H 20/84

combined with power distribution network

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Power line communication in general	H04B 3/54

Title – H04H 20/86

Arrangements characterised by special technical features of the broadcast information, e.g. signal form or information format

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for broadcast distribution of explicitly distinguishable and striking information which plays a very important role to specify a technical subject.

Title – H04H 20/88

Stereophonic broadcast systems

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for broadcast characterised by broadcast information which is stereophony.

Title – H04H 20/95

~~specially~~ characterised by a specific format, e.g. MP3 [MPEG-1 Audio Layer 3]

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the arrangement for broadcast distribution of information which has a special data format (a format which is not used in an ordinary broadcast specification).

Title – H04H 40/00

Arrangements specially adapted for receiving broadcast information

Definition statement

This group covers:

- only broadcast-specific receivers.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Receivers in general	H04B 1/06

Title – H04H 40/18

Arrangements characterised by circuits or components specially adapted for receiving

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Receiver circuits in general	H04B 1/16
Circuits or components specially adapted for broadcast distribution	H04H 20/44

Title – H04H 40/27

specially adapted for broadcast systems covered by groups H04H 20/53 to H04H 20/86

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the circuit or component for a broadcast receiver specially adapted for broadcast with characteristic use, transmission system or broadcast information.

Special rules of classification within this group

The technical subject covered by this group could also be classified to one of the groups (H04H 20/53- H04H 20/86) to clarify specialty of a use, a transmission system or broadcast information.

Title – H04H 40/36

specially adapted for stereophonic broadcast receiving~~, i.e. circuits or components specially adapted for stereophonic broadcast receiving~~

Definition statement

This group covers:

- the circuit or component for communication specially adapted for receiving broadcast information of stereophony.

Title – H04H 60/00

Arrangements for broadcast applications with a direct linkage to broadcast information or to broadcast space-time;

Broadcast-related systems

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for broadcast application which directly affects broadcast information or broadcast space-time.

- arrangements for broadcast application which is directly affected by broadcast information or broadcast space-time.

- broadcast-related system, i.e. other system which is directly affected by generation, broadcast, reception or use of broadcast information.

Title – H04H 60/02

Arrangements for generating broadcast information;

Arrangements for generating broadcast-related information with a direct linkage to broadcast information or to broadcast space-time;

Arrangements for simultaneous generation of broadcast information and broadcast-related information

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for generating broadcast information

- arrangements for generating broadcast-related information which directly affects broadcast information or broadcast space-time

- arrangements for generating broadcast-related information which is directly affected by broadcast information or broadcast space-time

- arrangements for simultaneous generation of broadcast information and broadcast-related information.

Title – H04H 60/04

Studio equipment;

Interconnection of studios

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Arrangements for producing a reverberation or echo sound	G10K 15/08

Title – H04H 60/09

Arrangements for device control with a direct linkage to broadcast information or to broadcast space-time;

Arrangements for control of broadcast-related services

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for device control which directly affects broadcast information or broadcast space-time

- arrangements for device control which is directly affected by broadcast information or broadcast space-time.

Title – H04H 60/27

Arrangements for recording or accumulating broadcast information or broadcast-related information

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Receivers in general with memory	H04B 1/06

Title – H04H 60/29

Arrangements for monitoring broadcast services or broadcast-related services

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Monitoring of the broadcast system itself	H04H 20/12
Monitoring whether a scheduled broadcast programme has been broadcast or not	H04H 20/14

Title – H04H 60/35

Arrangements for identifying or recognising characteristics with a direct linkage to broadcast information or to broadcast space-time, e.g. for identifying broadcast stations or for identifying users

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for identifying or recognising characteristics which directly affects broadcast information or broadcast space-time

- arrangements for identifying or recognising characteristics which is directly affected by broadcast information or broadcast space-time.

Title – H04H 60/38

~~Arrangements~~ for identifying broadcast time or space

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for identifying in which range on space-time a certain portion of broadcast information exists.

Title – H04H 60/39

~~Arrangements~~ for identifying broadcast space-time

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for identifying both broadcast time and broadcast space.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This group does not cover:

Systems characterised by using EPGs	H04H 60/72

Title – H04H 60/41

~~Arrangements~~ for identifying broadcast space, i.e. broadcast channels, broadcast stations or broadcast areas

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for identifying a set of broadcast channels in which particular broadcast information exists and is available or

- arrangements for identifying a geographical area determined by the set of broadcast channels.

Title – H04H 60/42

~~Arrangements~~ for identifying broadcast areas

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for identification of a geographical area as broadcast space.

Title – H04H 60/43

~~Arrangements~~ for identifying broadcast channels

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for identification of a channel set as broadcast space.

Title – H04H 60/44

~~Arrangements~~ for identifying broadcast stations

Definition statement

This group covers:

- arrangements for indirect identification of broadcast areas or channel sets by identifying broadcast stations.

Title – H04H 60/56

Arrangements characterised by components specially adapted for monitoring, identification or recognition covered by groups H04H 60/29 or H04H 60/35

Definition statement

This group covers:

- technical subjects covered by H04H 60/29 or H04H 60/35 in which a component for monitoring, identification or recognition especially plays an important role.

Special rules of classification within this group

The technical subject covered by this group could also be classified to one of the groups (H04H 60/29 or H04H 60/35) to clarify the object of monitoring, identification or recognition.

Title – H04H 60/58

of audio

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Determination or detection of speech characteristics in general	G10L 11/00
Speech recognition in general	G10L 15/00

Title – H04H 60/59

of video

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Recognising characters or patterns in general	G06K 9/00

Title – H04H 60/61

Arrangements for services using the result of monitoring, identification or recognition covered by groups H04H 60/29 or H04H 60/35

Definition statement

This group covers:

- technical subjects which are covered by H04H 60/29 or H04H 60/35, and are more strongly focused on a use of monitoring, identification or recognition outcome than its process, e.g. an integrated system which consists of (1) a broadcast reception subsystem which receives a broadcast music programme, and monitors broadcast time and a broadcast channel to which a user is tuning in, (2) a broadcast related information retrieving subsystem which firstly identifies numbers a user has listened to by looking up a broadcast database with the broadcast time and the broadcast channel, and secondly identifies compact discs which include the numbers by searching a compact disc information database, and (3) a online compact disc sales subsystem for selling the compact discs which include the numbers to the user over the Internet.

Special rules of classification within this group

The technical subject covered by this group could also be classified to one of the groups (H04H 60/29 or H04H 60/35) to clarify the object of monitoring, identification or recognition.

Title – H04H 60/63

~~Arrangements~~ for services of sales

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Electronic commerce in general	G06Q 30/00

Title – H04H 60/68

Systems specially adapted for using specific information, e.g. geographical or meteorological information

Definition statement

This group covers:

- explicitly distinguishable and striking information which plays a very important role to specify a technical subject.

Title – H04H 60/72

using EPGs [Electronic Programme Guides]

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This group does not cover:

Systems characterised by EPG mainly focusing on identifying broadcast space-time	H04H 60/39

Title – H04H 60/74

using programme-related information, e.g. title, composer or interpreter

Definition statement

This group covers:

- special type of meta-information, which is related to broadcast programme, e.g. title, composer or interpreter of broadcast music.

Title – H04H 60/76

Arrangements characterised by transmission systems other than for broadcast, e.g. the Internet

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Transmission systems for broadcast	H04H 20/65

Title – H04H 60/78

characterised by source locations or destination locations

Definition statement

This group covers:

- technical subjects characterised by an entity of transmission or reception.

Title – H04H 60/81

characterised by the transmission system itself

Definition statement

This group covers:

- technical subjects covered by group H04H 60/76 wherein characteristics of transmission system not for broadcast, e.g. structure of transmission path or network composition of non-broadcast distribution system, acutely affect the technical subject.

Title – H04H 60/91

Mobile communication networks

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This group does not cover:

Telephonic networks used for the Internet access	H04H 60/85

Title – H04H 60/94

Telephonic networks

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This group does not cover:

Mobile communication networks used for the Internet access	H04H 60/84

Title – H04H 60/96

CATV systems

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This group does not cover:

CATV networks used for the Internet access	H04H 60/86

UK Intellectual Property Office	**GB Comments**
Definition Project D124, subclass H04H	Date: 18 November 2008

1) The UK notes that the proposals involve taking the titles or descriptions of existing main groups, subgroups and lower, (e.g. from H04H 20/00, 20/02, 20/10, 20/12, 20/14, 20/79, etc.) and, in each case, creating a new Title and a new Definition Statement from the existing title or description. In many cases, the resulting Definition Statement is only a paraphrased version of the new Title (e.g. at H04H 20/10, 20/22, 20/24, etc.) In some cases, editorial correction is also required. (Please see below).

The UK recognises that the new structure has been carried over from project C434. It is noticeable that the deletion of all such new Titles and Definition Statements, for entries at two dot level or below, is suggested in annex 21 of project C434. However, these new Titles and Definition statements reappear, without comment, in annex 26 of project C434, which appears to be substantially equivalent to the R proposal (annex 2) of the present project.

At this stage, it is not clear what benefit accrues from the proposal to take the titles and descriptions of the existing main groups (and subgroups, etc) and to create multiple new Titles and Definition Statements in this way, in addition to the Title and Definition Statement for the Subclass as a whole. A single Definition Statement followed by a suitable, bulleted list, would appear to be more compact and easily readable.

2) Informative References

Under Title H04H 20/12, informative reference H04H 60/29 is given.
Under Title H04H 20/44, informative reference H04H 40/27 is given.
Under Title H04H 20/65, informative reference H04H 60/76 is given.
Under Title H04H 40/18, informative reference H04H 20/44 is given.
Under Title H04H 60/29, informative references H04H 20/12 & 20/14 are given.
Under Title H04H 60/76, informative reference H04H 20/65 is given.

These appear to be limiting references, rather than informative references.

Some re-wording of the tabular entries also appears desirable, e.g.:

a) From H04H 20/44 to H04H 40/27: ‘A receiving circuit or a component specially adapted for broadcast’
The current text at H04H 40/00 (main group), 40/18 (one dot) and 40/27 (two dots) would suggest that the following might be better:
‘A circuit or a component specially adapted for broadcast *reception*’.

b) From H04H 20/12 to H04H 60/29: ‘Monitoring of a broadcast-related *system*’
Currently, H04H 60/29 refers to ‘broadcast or broadcast-related *services.*’

The distinction is not clear.

Noting also that H04H 20/14 relates to ‘Arrangements- for monitoring *programmes*’, the UK feels that additional explanatory notes relating to classification in H04H 20/12, 20/14 and 60/29 would be helpful.

3) The UK has noticed at least the following editorial matters:

a) Definition Statement for H04H 20/02
‘Arrangements for *a relay* specially adapted for broadcast distribution or broadcast programme’

As ‘a relay’ could suggest an electrical component, the present wording appears preferable, i.e.: ‘Arrangements for *relaying* broadcast information’.

However, this would merely repeat the wording of the title. The benefit is not clear. (Please see 1 above.)

b) In several cases, the proposed new Title does not stand alone as a title, e.g. H04H 20/14 ‘for monitoring cannels’, or H04H 20/33 ‘by plural channels’
(These ‘Titles’ have often come from text at two dot level, or lower.)

c) Several definition statements open with words such as ‘The system which…’.
‘Systems that…’ would be better’.

d) In some cases, it is not clear what distinction is really being made between the proposed Title and the proposed Definition statement.
For example, at H04H 20/22:
‘Title - Arrangements for broadcast of identical information via plural broadcast systems’
‘Definition statement - [Systems that] broadcast the same information by [ ] plural broadcast systems’

e) H04H20/33
present:
20/28 - arrangements for simultaneous broadcast of plural pieces of information
20/33 -- by plural channels

proposed:
20/28 *Title:* Arrangements for simultaneous broadcast of plural pieces of information
20/33 *Title:* by plural channels
This group covers: '- the system which requires multiple channels to broadcast plural portions of information simultaneously'

The language of 'requirement' appears to differ from what is conveyed by the present text.

General revision of such matters may be helpful.

4) Synonyms and Keywords

CATV = Community Antenna Television

This is acceptable.

In the UK, the letters are also taken to stand for Community (or Common) Aerial Television.

(Aerial [*n*] = Antenna)

Bill Riggs

Japan Patent Office

Project: D124

Rapporteur Report

The Rapporteur still thinks that the latest proposal (Annex 2) should be approved as is.
A reply to the GB comment posted on November 19, 2008 is as follows.

GB comment:
1) The UK notes that the proposals involve taking the titles or descriptions of existing main groups, subgroups and lower, (e.g. from H04H 20/00, 20/02, 20/10, 20/12, 20/14, 20/79, etc.) and, in each case, creating a new Title and a new Definition Statement from the existing title or description. In many cases, the resulting Definition Statement is only a paraphrased version of the new Title (e.g. at H04H 20/10, 20/22, 20/24, etc.) In some cases, editorial correction is also required. (Please see below).

JP comment:
Please see the below JP comments.

GB comment:
The UK recognises that the new structure has been carried over from project C434. It is noticeable that the deletion of all such new Titles and Definition Statements, for entries at two dot level or below, is suggested in annex 21 of project C434. However, these new Titles and Definition statements reappear, without comment, in annex 26 of project C434, which appears to be substantially equivalent to the R proposal (annex 2) of the present project.

JP comment:
Please refer the Annex 19 of C434 (Rapporteur Report).
In the Annex 21 of C434, the Rapporteur actually deleted some classification places, i.e. all the AL places not used in the CL, from the "CL" initial classification definition.
It should be repeatedly noted that <u>the deleted informative reference still remains in the "AL" classification definition</u>.

GB comment:
At this stage, it is not clear what benefit accrues from the proposal to take the titles and descriptions of the existing main groups (and subgroups, etc) and to create multiple new Titles and Definition Statements in this way, in addition to the Title and Definition Statement for the Subclass as a whole. A single Definition Statement followed by a suitable, bulleted list, would appear to be more compact and easily readable.

JP comment:
Annex IX of IPC/CE/32/12 (GUIDELINES FOR DRAFTING CLASSIFICATION DEFINITIONS) says that a reference concerning only a particular main group or subgroup appears in the corresponding section of the definition of that particular group (INFORMATIVE REFERENCES).
Following the guidelines, it is clear that not only a definition statement of the subclass H04H but also some subgroup level definitions, e.g. H04H 20/12, are necessary.
Therefore, the Rapporteur does not think the number of the Definition Statements should be reduced.
Moreover, the Rapporteur thinks that when a classification scheme revised drastically, as much information should be provided through the classification definition as possible.
Thus, the Rapporteur thinks that the initial proposal is enough and sufficient for the IPC users.
However, the Rapporteur does not hesitate to delete some definition statements if the proposal includes any redundant and useless description.

GB comment:
2) Informative References

Under Title H04H 20/12, informative reference H04H 60/29 is given.
Under Title H04H 20/44, informative reference H04H 40/27 is given.

Under Title H04H 20/65, informative reference H04H 60/76 is given.
Under Title H04H 40/18, informative reference H04H 20/44 is given.
Under Title H04H 60/29, informative references H04H 20/12 & 20/14 are given.
Under Title H04H 60/76, informative reference H04H 20/65 is given.

These appear to be limiting references, rather than informative references.

JP comment:
There are no scope overlaps among the main groups H04H 20/00, H04H 40/00, and H04H 60/00. (Please see page 4 of Annex 2 of C434.)
The Rapporteur thus thinks that references from a main group to another main group in H04H are always informative because these main groups don't interfere in their scope each other.

GB comment:
Some re-wording of the tabular entries also appears desirable, e.g.:

a) From H04H 20/44 to H04H 40/27: ‘A receiving circuit or a component specially adapted for broadcast’
The current text at H04H 40/00 (main group), 40/18 (one dot) and 40/27 (two dots) would suggest that the following might be better:
‘A circuit or a component specially adapted for broadcast *reception*’.

b) From H04H 20/12 to H04H 60/29: ‘Monitoring of a broadcast-related *system*’
Currently, H04H 60/29 refers to ‘broadcast or broadcast-related *services.*’
The distinction is not clear.

JP comment:
The Rapporteur thinks that the wording in the initial proposal (Annex 2 of C434) could be approved. However, the Rapporteur does not hesitate to modify the expression as GB suggests if really needed.

GB comment:
Noting also that H04H 20/14 relates to ‘Arrangements- for monitoring *programmes*’, the UK feels that additional explanatory notes relating to classification in H04H 20/12, 20/14 and 60/29 would be helpful.

JP comment:
The Rapporteur feels no need for the additional explanatory notes.
However, the Rapporteur does not hesitate to add some description if really needed.

GB comment:
3) The UK has noticed at least the following editorial matters:

a) Definition Statement for H04H 20/02
‘Arrangements for *a relay* specially adapted for broadcast distribution or broadcast programme’

As ‘a relay’ could suggest an electrical component, the present wording appears preferable, i.e.: ‘Arrangements for *relaying* broadcast information’.

However, this would merely repeat the wording of the title. The benefit is not clear. (Please see 1 above.)

JP comment:
The Rapporteur thinks that the wording in the initial proposal could be approved. However, the Rapporteur does not hesitate to modify the expression or delete the definition statement as GB suggests if really needed.

GB comment:
b) In several cases, the proposed new Title does not stand alone as a title, e.g. H04H 20/14 ‘for monitoring cannels’, or H04H 20/33 ‘by plural channels’
(These ‘Titles’ have often come from text at two dot level, or lower.)

JP comment:
Title of the classification definition proposal precisely follows "GUIDELINES FOR DRAFTING CLASSIFICATION DEFINITIONS" (Annex IX of IPC/CE/32/12).

That is, the guidelines say "The title is as indicated in the classification scheme" (TITLE).

GB comment:
c) Several definition statements open with words such as ‘The system which…’.
‘Systems that…’ would be better’.

GB comment:
d) In some cases, it is not clear what distinction is really being made between the proposed Title and the proposed Definition statement.
For example, at H04H 20/22:
‘Title - Arrangements for broadcast of identical information via plural broadcast systems’
‘Definition statement - [Systems that] broadcast the same information by [ ] plural broadcast systems’

JP comment:
The Rapporteur thinks that the wording in the initial proposal could be approved. However, the Rapporteur does not hesitate to modify the expression the definition statement as GB suggests if really needed.

GB comment:
e) H04H20/33
present:
20/28 - arrangements for simultaneous broadcast of plural pieces of information
20/33 -- by plural channels

proposed:
20/28 *Title:* Arrangements for simultaneous broadcast of plural pieces of information
20/33 *Title:* by plural channels
This group covers: ‘- the system which requires multiple channels to broadcast plural portions of information simultaneously’

The language of ‘requirement’ appears to differ from what is conveyed by the present text.

General revision of such matters may be helpful.

JP comment:
The Rapporteur thinks that the wording in the initial proposal could be approved.
The Rapporteur thinks that "information is broadcast by plural channels" and "(broadcast) system requires multiple channels" are equivalent.
However, the Rapporteur does not hesitate to modify the expression if really needed.

GB comment:
4) Synonyms and Keywords

CATV = Community Antenna Television

This is acceptable.

In the UK, the letters are also taken to stand for Community (or Common) Aerial Television.

(Aerial [*n*] = Antenna)

JP comment:
The Rapporteur thinks that the wording in the initial proposal could be approved.
However, the Rapporteur does not hesitate to modify the expression as below if really needed.

CATV = Community Antenna Television, or Community (or Common) Aerial Television

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
Topic: Project D-124 **H04H, Broadcast communication**	**Date: 25 November 2008**

Ref: D-124, Annex 2, Rapporteur proposal, 29 May 08
A003, Annex 24, Proposal of Scheme, 20 April 07

US greatly thanks Rapporteur for its proposal.
US also has some comments on the definitions and scheme presented in D124-Annex 2 and A003- Annex 24 respectively as followed:

H04H 20/00: Arrangements for broadcast or for distribution combined with broadcast
This group covers:
- arrangements for broadcast distribution.
- arrangements for non-broadcast distribution combined with broadcast distribution.
- arrangements for broadcast distribution combined with other broadcast distribution.

➔ It appears that the term "distribution " used here refers to any communication distribution , i.e. Broadcast or Non broadcast distribution.
Suggest adding a definition for "distribution" in the glossary.

H04H 20/02: Arrangements for relaying broadcast information
This group covers:
- arrangements for a relay specially adapted for broadcast distribution or broadcast programme.
➔ Broadcast program is a form of broadcast information. US suggests modifying the definition of Broadcast information in the glossary as followed:

broadcast information	all kinds of information distributed by broadcast systems, e.g. broadcast program.

H04H 20/26: Arrangements for switching distribution systems
This group covers:
- the total system which selects one from transmission systems between a broadcast station and receivers considering conditions at the time of information distribution.

➔ The definition of H04H 20/26 is not clear: Is this subclass
- selecting/switching between transmitters within a distribution system?
- or selecting/switching between entirely different distribution systems?

Please clarify and modify title and definition appropriately.

H04H 20/28: Arrangements for simultaneous broadcast of plural pieces of information
This group covers:
- multiplex communication specially adapted for broadcast distribution.

➔H04H 20/28: Suggest adding informative reference in H04J for Multiplex communication in general:

H04H 20/88: Stereophonic broadcast systems
This group covers:
- arrangements for broadcast characterised by broadcast information which is stereophony.
➔ Suggest adding reference to H04S for Stereophonic broadcast systems per se.

H04H 40/36 : specially adapted for stereophonic broadcast receiving
This group covers:
- the circuit or component for communication specially adapted for receiving broadcast information of stereophony.
➔ Suggest adding reference to H04S for Stereophonic broadcast systems per se.

H04H 60/38: for identifying broadcast time or space
This group covers:
- arrangements for identifying in which range on space-time a certain portion of broadcast information exists.

➔ It appears that the definition does not reflect the scope of the title per the definition of Space-time in the glossary.
➔ Should it be arrangements for identifying in which range on space or time a certain portion of broadcast information exists.

H04H 60/44: for identifying broadcast stations
This group covers:
- arrangements for indirect identification of broadcast areas or channel sets by identifying broadcast stations.
  ➔ The definition of 60/44 doesn't reflect the scope of its title.

Should it be changed to:
- arrangements for identification of broadcast stations that include broadcast areas or channel sets.

Also, referring to set H04H 60/38-60/44: we have

60/38	• • *for identifying broadcast **time or space***
60/39	• • • *for identifying broadcast **space-time** (use of Electronic Programme Guides H04H 60/72)*
60/40	• • • *for identifying broadcast **time***
60/41	• • • *for identifying broadcast **space**, i.e. **broadcast channels, broadcast stations or broadcast areas***
60/42	• • • • *for identifying **broadcast areas***
60/43	• • • • *for identifying **broadcast channels***
60/44	• • • • *for identifying **broadcast stations***

➔ It appears that the subgroups 60/39, 60/40 and 60/41 exhaust the outdent subgroup 60/38.

➔ Similarly, the subgroups 60/42, 60/43, and 60/44 also exhaust the subgroup 60/41.

H04H 60/91: Mobile communication networks (for accessing the Internet H04H 60/85)

➔ Suggest adding reference to H04M, mobile wireless network per se.

H04H 60/94: Telephonic networks (for accessing the Internet H04H 60/84)
➔ Suggest adding reference to H04M, mobile wireless network per se.

[End]

Japan Patent Office		November 26, 2008
Project: D124	Subclass: H04H	

Rapporteur Report

The Rapporteur still thinks that the latest proposal (Annex 2) should be approved as is.
A reply to the US comment posted on November 25, 2008 is as follows.

US comment:
H04H 20/00: Arrangements for broadcast or for distribution combined with broadcast
This group covers:
- arrangements for broadcast distribution.
- arrangements for non-broadcast distribution combined with broadcast distribution.
- arrangements for broadcast distribution combined with other broadcast distribution.

➔ It appears that the term "distribution " used here refers to any communication distribution , i.e. Broadcast or Non broadcast distribution.
Suggest adding a definition for "distribution" in the glossary.

JP comment:
Please see page 3 of Annex 8 of A003.
The Rapporteur thinks that the definition of the term "distribution" is not necessary because the term in the subclass H04H is used in general meaning as it is.
Moreover, the relationship between "broadcast" and "distribution" is clear enough in view of the glossary of the term "broadcast."

US comment:
H04H 20/02: Arrangements for relaying broadcast information
This group covers:
- arrangements for a relay specially adapted for broadcast distribution or broadcast programme.
➔ Broadcast program is a form of broadcast information. US suggests modifying the definition of Broadcast information in the glossary as followed:

broadcast information	all kinds of information distributed by broadcast systems, e.g. broadcast program.

JP comment:
The Rapporteur thinks that the wording in the initial proposal (Annex 2 of D124) could be approved.
However, the Rapporteur does not hesitate to add the example if really needed.

US comment:
H04H 20/26: Arrangements for switching distribution systems
This group covers:
- the total system which selects one from transmission systems between a broadcast station and receivers considering conditions at the time of information distribution.

➔ The definition of H04H 20/26 is not clear: Is this subclass
- selecting/switching between transmitters within a distribution system?
- or selecting/switching between entirely different distribution systems?

Please clarify and modify title and definition appropriately.

JP comment:
H04H 20/26 covers arrangements for switching two or more distribution systems. It is obvious by its title and definition statement.
Merely transmitter-switching in a single distribution system is out of the scope.
If a document discloses an arrangement for switching two or more distribution systems wherein they are distinguishable as a system respectively, it would be classified into H04H 20/26.

US comment:
H04H 20/28: Arrangements for simultaneous broadcast of plural pieces of information
This group covers:
- multiplex communication specially adapted for broadcast distribution.
➔H04H 20/28: Suggest adding informative reference in H04J for Multiplex communication in general:

JP comment:
The Rapporteur feels no need to add the reference because the limiting reference to H04J already exists in the title of the subclass H04H.
However, the Rapporteur does not hesitate to add the informative reference to the classification definitions if really needed.

US comment:
H04H 20/88: Stereophonic broadcast systems
This group covers:
- arrangements for broadcast characterised by broadcast information which is stereophony.
➔ Suggest adding reference to H04S for Stereophonic broadcast systems per se.

H04H 40/36 : specially adapted for stereophonic broadcast receiving
This group covers:
- the circuit or component for communication specially adapted for receiving broadcast information of stereophony.
➔ Suggest adding reference to H04S for Stereophonic broadcast systems per se.

JP comment:
The Rapporteur thinks that the limiting reference to H04S is not necessary because there is no overlap between H04H and H04S.
The Rapporteur also feels no need to add the informative reference to the classification definitions.
Adding the remark, the Rapporteur understands that H04S does not cover Stereophonic broadcast systems per se.

US comment:
H04H 60/38: for identifying broadcast time or space
This group covers:
- arrangements for identifying in which range on space-time a certain portion of broadcast information exists.

➔ It appears that the definition does not reflect the scope of the title per the definition of Space-time in the glossary.
➔ Should it be arrangements for identifying in which range on space or time a certain portion of broadcast information exists.

JP comment:
The Rapporteur thinks that the words "range on space-time" are equivalent to "space or time."
However, the Rapporteur does not hesitate to modify the definition statement as US suggested if really needed.

US comment:
H04H 60/44: for identifying broadcast stations
This group covers:
- arrangements for indirect identification of broadcast areas or channel sets by identifying broadcast stations.
  ➔ The definition of 60/44 doesn't reflect the scope of its title.

Should it be changed to:
- arrangements for identification of broadcast stations that include broadcast areas or channel sets.

JP comment:
The Rapporteur thinks that the subgroup H04H 60/44 also identifies broadcast space because the subgroup is an inferior group of H04H 60/41, and the definition statement of H04H 60/44 could be lead by the title of H04H 60/44 with reference to the glossary of "broadcast space."

US comment:
Also, referring to set H04H 60/38-60/44: we have

60/38 • • *for identifying broadcast* ***time or space***

60/39 • • • *for identifying broadcast **space-time** (use of Electronic Programme Guides H04H 60/72)*

60/40 • • • *for identifying broadcast **time***

60/41 • • • *for identifying broadcast **space**, i.e. **broadcast channels, broadcast stations or broadcast areas***

60/42 • • • • *for identifying **broadcast areas***

60/43 • • • • *for identifying **broadcast channels***

60/44 • • • • *for identifying **broadcast stations***

➔ It appears that the subgroups 60/39, 60/40 and 60/41 exhaust the outdent subgroup 60/38.

➔ Similarly, the subgroups 60/42, 60/43, and 60/44 also exhaust the subgroup 60/41.

JP comment:
If there is a patent document which discloses so-called "broadcast space" substantively but not exactly sure it is broadcast area, broadcast channel, or broadcast station, the document would be classified into H04H 60/41.
The same applied to H04H60/38.

US comment:
H04H 60/91: Mobile communication networks (for accessing the Internet H04H 60/85)
➔ Suggest adding reference to H04M, mobile wireless network per se.

H04H 60/94: Telephonic networks (for accessing the Internet H04H 60/84)
➔ Suggest adding reference to H04M, mobile wireless network per se.

JP comment:
The Rapporteur thinks that the limiting reference to H04M is not necessary because there is no overlap between H04H and H04M. (See also page 2 of Annex 16 of C434.)
The Rapporteur also feels no need to add the informative reference to the classification definitions.
Adding the remark, the Rapporteur understands that H04M does not cover mobile wireless network per se.

ANNEX 09

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2

Project D 124 (C 434) (electrical) – In view of the late submission of comments, the Working Group invited a further round of comments, to be followed by a new rapporteur report.

Projet D 124 (C 434) (électricité) – les observations ayant été formulées tardivement, le groupe de travail en a demandé une nouvelle série, qui serait suivie d'un nouveau rapport établi par le rapporteur.

Japan Patent Office		February 27, 2009
Project: D124	Subclass: H04H	

Rapporteur Report

January 30, 2009 was the deadline for further comments invited by the Working Group (Annex 9).

Despite the invitation, no further comments have been made by the deadline for this new Rapporteur Report, February 27, 2009.

The Rapporteur still thinks that the latest proposal (Annex 2) should be approved as is.

In addition, there is no informative reference to be removed from the scheme of H04H as the Rapporteur has already stated in Annex 3.

IPC/D 138
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **WG** **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **H05B** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :**
RAPPORTEUR : **GB**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **E** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	18.12.2006
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	GB	12.10.2007
3	Comments	Observations	JP	08.11.2007
4	Comments	Observations	JP	08.11.2007
5	Comments	Observations	US	07.01.2008
6	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
7	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	GB	16.04.2008
8	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	16.04.2008
9	Comments	Observations	EP	22.04.2008
10	Comments	Observations	JP	15.05.2008
11	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	19.05.2008
12	English Version by Editorial Board	Version Anglaise par Comittée de rédaction	IB	26.06.2008
13	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	26.06.2008
14	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	19.09.2008
15	French version	Version française	FR	03.11.2008
16	English Version by Editorial Board	Version Anglaise par Comittée de rédaction	IB	27.11.2008

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
17	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	13.01.2009
18	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	04.02.2009
19	French version	Version française	FR	11.02.2009
20	Comments	Observations	US	11.03.2009
21	French Version by Editorial Board	Version francaise par comité de rédaction	IB	12.03.2009

UK Intellectual Property Office	Rapporteur report
Definition project D138 **Subclass H05B**	Date: 19 September 2008

Removal of informative references

Proposal:

H05B 1/02 - - - heating apparatus (thermally-actuated switches H01H 37/00)

H05B 7/148 - - - regulating electric characteristics of arcs in general G05F 1/02) – i.e. delete last reference.

Martin Price

ANNEX 17

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2

Project D 138 (electrical) – The Working Group approved the French version of Annex 15, subject to some editorial amendments and to adding a reference to group A61F 7/00 to the list of references pointing to application places (see the Editorial Board version in Annex 16 of the project file), and invited the International Bureau to include it in the English version as well. The Rapporteur was invited to include in his proposal for the removal of non-limiting references also references to application places, taking into account the agreement mentioned in paragraph 13 of this report and the views in project D 098.

Projet D 138 (électricité) – le groupe de travail a approuvé la version française de l'annexe 15, sous réserve de quelques modifications rédactionnelles et de l'ajout d'un renvoi au groupe A61F 7/00 dans la liste des renvois pointant vers des endroits axés sur l'application (voir la version du Comité de rédaction dans l'annexe 16 du dossier de projet), et il a invité le Bureau international à insérer aussi ce renvoi dans la version anglaise. Le rapporteur a été invité à inclure également dans sa proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs des renvois vers des endroits axés sur l'application, eu égard à l'accord dégagé mentionné au paragraphe 13 du présent rapport et aux opinions exprimées dans le projet D098.

UK Intellectual Property Office	Rapporteur report
Definition project D138 **Subclass H05B**	Date: 4 February 2009

Removal of application-type references

As asked for in Annex 17, here is a proposal:

H05B 1/02 - - - heating apparatus (<delete reference>)

H05B 6/00 - - - electromagnetic fields (<delete both references>)

H05B 7/00 - - - electric discharge (plasma torches H05H 1/26) – i.e. delete first reference.

Martin Price

IPC Revision WG –Projet de définition	Projet: D138
	Classe/sous-classe: H05B
Version française FR	Date : ~~novembre 2008~~février 2009

Titre – H05B
Chauffage électrique;
Éclairage électrique non prévu ailleurs

Énoncé de la définition

La présente sous-classe couvre:
Le chauffage électrique:

- Les sources de chauffage par résistance ohmique, par champs électriques, magnétiques ou électromagnétiques, par décharge électrique, ou utilisant une combinaison de ceux-ci;
- Les sources de lumière spécialement adaptées au chauffage, p.ex. les sources infrarouges telles qu'utilisées dans les fours à lampe.

La présente sous-classe couvre non seulement les éléments électriques et les dispositions des circuits mais également les aspects électriques de leurs agencements quand ceux-ci concernent des cas d'application générale. Dans le cas où les éléments de chauffage sont utilisés dans des applications spécifiques, voir les sous-classes appropriées.

L'éclairage électrique:

- Les lampes à arc électrique, les sources de lumière électroluminescentes et les sources de lumière utilisant une combinaison de différents types de génération de lumière;
- Les agencements de circuits pour les sources électriques de lumière.

Les circuits primaires des sources de lumière ci-dessus et les éléments de ces circuits sont couverts par la présente sous-classe. Les sources de lumière ci-dessus, lorsqu'elles sont combinées avec des sources de lumière de nature différente, sont également couvertes par la présente sous-classe.

La présente sous-classe est résiduelle pour l'éclairage électrique.

Liens entre secteurs d'une large portée

Chauffage électrique

Les utilisations de sources de chauffage électrique ou les appareils comportant de telles sources de chauffage sont trop nombreux pour être mentionnés et concernent ~~tout~~tous les domaines technologiques possibles. Exemples d'endroits où de telles utilisations ou de tels appareils peuvent être trouvés : A47J (cuisson domestique), B21J, B21K (forgeage avec dispositions pour le chauffage), C21, C22, C23 (métallurgie), F24 (chauffage domestique et poêles), F27 (fourneaux et fours). Voir également les renvois ci-dessous.
Éclairage électrique:

Les utilisations de sources électriques de lumière sont également trop nombreuses pour être mentionnées et concernent tous les domaines technologiques possibles. Une liste détaillée d'endroits possibles pour les dispositifs d'éclairage est présentée à la Note (3) après le titre de la sous-classe F21.

La sous-classe F21 couvre l'agencement matériel de différents éléments électriques, c.-à-d. leurs positions géométriques ou physiques mutuelles, telles que les structures ou les caractéristiques de construction des dispositifs d'éclairage comportant une source de lumière, électrique ou autre.

Renvois influençant le classement dans la présente sous-classe

La présente sous-classe ne couvre pas:

Régulation des caractéristiques électriques des arcs en général	G05F 1/02

Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente sous-classe lorsque cette matière est spécialement adaptée à une application, utilisée à des fins particulières ou incorporée dans un système plus vaste:

Appareils de chauffage ou de refroidissement pour traitement médical ou thérapeutique	**A61F 7/00**
Chauffage par champs électriques, magnétiques ou électromagnétiques à des fins thérapeutiques	A61N 5/00
Assemblage d'éléments préformés par chauffage de matières plastiques ou de substances à l'état plastique	B29C 65/02
Interrupteurs actionnés thermiquement	H01H 37/00
Tubes à faisceau électronique ou ionique pour le traitement localisé d'objets	H01J 37/30

Formatted: Font: 12 pt, Complex Script Font: 12 pt

Entrées par rapport auxquelles la présente sous-classe est résiduelle:

Tubes à décharge électrique	H01J
Lampes à décharge électrique	H01J 61/00 à H01J 65/00
Lampes électriques à incandescence	H01K
Dispositifs à semi-conducteurs avec au moins une barrière de potentiel ou une barrière de surface particulière, spécial~~l~~ement adaptés à l'émission de lumière	H01L 27/15, H01L 33/00
Dispositifs émetteurs de lumière organiques (OLED)	H01L 27/32, H01L 51/50
Dispositifs utilisant l'émission stimulée	H01S
Torches à plasma	H05H 1/26

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

Mesure de la température par colorimétrie	G01J
Commande de la température en général	G05D 23/00
Régulation de la puissance électrique en général	G05F 1/66

Règles particulières de classement dans la présente sous-classe

Aucune

Glossaire

Aucun

Synonymes et mots clés

Aucun

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
IPC Revision Working Group	
Topic: D138	**Date: March 11, 2009**

US appreciates the Rapporteur's proposal for removal of references in Annex 18. US agrees with most of the proposal. However, US believes that for H05H 1/02 the reference H01H 37/00 should be reconsidered. We feel that given H05H 1/02 deals with automatic switching arrangements for heating and H01H 37/00 involves switching by a thermal condition H01H 37/00 reference should not be deleted. At the very least H01H 37/00 should be included in the definition of H05H as an informative reference.

IPC Revision WG –Projet de définition Version française FR	Projet: D138 Classe/sous-classe: H05B Date : février 2009

Titre – H05B
Chauffage électrique;
Éclairage électrique non prévu ailleurs

Énoncé de la définition

La présente sous-classe couvre:
Le chauffage électrique:

- Les sources de chauffage par résistance ohmique, par champs électriques, magnétiques ou électromagnétiques, par décharge électrique, ou utilisant une combinaison de ceux-ci;
- Les sources de lumière spécialement adaptées au chauffage, p.ex. les sources infrarouges telles qu'utilisées dans les fours à lampe.

La présente sous-classe couvre non seulement les éléments électriques et les dispositions des circuits mais également les aspects électriques de leurs agencements quand ceux-ci concernent des cas d'application générale. Dans le cas où les éléments de chauffage sont utilisés dans des applications spécifiques, voir les sous-classes appropriées.

L'éclairage électrique:

- Les lampes à arc électrique, les sources de lumière électroluminescentes et les sources de lumière utilisant une combinaison de différents types de génération de lumière;
- Les agencements de circuits pour les sources électriques de lumière.

Les circuits primaires des sources de lumière ci-dessus et les éléments de ces circuits sont couverts par la présente sous-classe. Les sources de lumière ci-dessus, lorsqu'elles sont combinées avec des sources de lumière de nature différente, sont également couvertes par la présente sous-classe.

La présente sous-classe est résiduelle pour l'éclairage électrique.

Liens entre secteurs d'une large portée

Chauffage électrique

Les utilisations de sources de chauffage électrique ou les appareils comportant de telles sources de chauffage sont trop nombreux pour être mentionnés et concernent tous les domaines technologiques possibles. Exemples d'endroits où de telles utilisations ou de tels appareils peuvent être trouvés: A47J (cuisson domestique), B21J, B21K (forgeage à chaud), C21, C22, C23 (métallurgie), F24 (chauffage domestique et poêles), F27 (fourneaux et fours). Voir également les renvois ci-dessous.

Éclairage électrique:

Les utilisations de sources électriques de lumière sont également trop nombreuses pour être mentionnées et concernent tous les domaines technologiques possibles. Une liste détaillée d'endroits possibles pour les dispositifs d'éclairage est présentée à la Note (3) après le titre de la sous-classe F21.

La sous-classe F21 couvre l'agencement matériel de différents éléments électriques, c.-à-d. leurs positions géométriques ou physiques mutuelles, telles que les structures ou les caractéristiques de construction des dispositifs d'éclairage comportant une source de lumière, électrique ou autre.

Renvois influençant le classement dans la présente sous-classe

La présente sous-classe ne couvre pas:

Régulation des caractéristiques électriques des arcs en général	G05F 1/02

Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente sous-classe lorsque cette matière est spécialement adaptée à une application, utilisée à des fins particulières ou incorporée dans un système plus vaste:

Appareils de chauffage ou de refroidissement pour traitement médical ou thérapeutique	A61F 7/00
Chauffage par champs électriques, magnétiques ou électromagnétiques à des fins thérapeutiques	A61N 5/00
Assemblage d'éléments préformés par chauffage de matières plastiques ou de substances à l'état plastique	B29C 65/02
Interrupteurs actionnés thermiquement	H01H 37/00
Tubes à faisceau électronique ou ionique pour le traitement localisé d'objets	H01J 37/30

Entrées par rapport auxquelles la présente sous-classe est résiduelle:

Tubes à décharge électrique	H01J
Lampes à décharge électrique	H01J 61/00 à H01J 65/00
Lampes électriques à incandescence	H01K
Dispositifs à semi-conducteurs avec au moins une barrière de potentiel ou une barrière de surface particulière, spécialement adaptés à l'émission de lumière	H01L 27/15, H01L 33/00
Dispositifs émetteurs de lumière organiques (OLED)	H01L 27/32, H01L 51/50
Dispositifs utilisant l'émission stimulée	H01S
Torches à plasma	H05H 1/26

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

Mesure de la température par colorimétrie	G01J
Commande de la température en général	G05D 23/00
Régulation de la puissance électrique en général	G05F 1/66

Règles particulières de classement dans la présente sous-classe

Aucune

Glossaire

Aucun

Synonymes et mots clés

Aucun

IPC/D 143
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 23.05.2007

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **WG** **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **G21G** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :**
RAPPORTEUR : **GB**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **E** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail		18.12.2006

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/16/3
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/16/3

22. Following the Rapporteur proposals in projects R 701 to R 706, it was further agreed that, for the majority of the remaining subclasses without consensus, the need for a new residual main group should be further investigated in the context of definition projects. For the following subclasses definition projects already existed or were created at the present session of the Working Group: A01N (D 001), A44B (D 012), A45D (D 134), A47J (D 135), A61B (D 013), A61C (D 104), A61F, (D 089), A61M (D109), A61N (D 014), A63D (D 136), B65D (D 081), C07C (D002), C10J (D 137), C30B (D 141), E01D (D 031), F16C (D101), F16D (D 102), F16G (D 103), F23Q (D 139), F23R (D 140), G01C (D 051), G12B (D 142), G21G (D 143), H05B (D 138).

23. …

24. For all subclasses listed in paragraphs 22 and 23 above, the Rapporteurs of the respective definition project were invited to review, in the light of the comments submitted to projects R 701 to R 706, if a new residual main group was needed, or if the inclusion of further explanations, references or definitions for main groups would sufficiently clarify the exhaustion of the corresponding subclass by its main groups.

22. Suite aux propositions du rapporteur figurant dans les projets R 701 à R 706, il a été convenu en outre que, pour la majorité des sous-classes restantes qui ne faisaient pas l'objet d'un consensus, l'opportunité d'introduire un nouveau groupe principal résiduel devrait être étudiée de manière plus approfondie dans le contexte des projets de définition. Des projets de définition existaient déjà ou ont été créés pendant la session en cours du groupe de travail pour les sous-classes suivantes : A01N (D 001), A44B (D 12), A45D (D 134), A47J (D 135), A61B (D 013), A61C (D 104), A61F, (D 089), A61M (D 109), A61N (D 014), A63D (D 136), B65D (D 081), C07C (D 002), C10J (D 137), C30B (D 141), E01D (D 031), F16C (D 101), F16D (D 102), F16G (D 103), F23Q (D 139), F23R (D 140), G01C (D 051), G12B (D 142), G21G (D 143) et H05B (D 138).

23. …

24. Pour toutes les sous-classes énumérées aux paragraphes 22 et 23 ci-dessus, les rapporteurs des projets de définition correspondants ont été invités à examiner, compte tenu des observations formulées sur les projets R 701 à R 706, si un nouveau groupe principal résiduel était nécessaire, ou si l'introduction d'explications, de renvois ou de définitions supplémentaires pour les groupes principaux serait suffisante pour indiquer clairement que l'ensemble de la sous-classe correspondante est couverte par ses groupes principaux.

ANNEX 02

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/18/4
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/18/4

22. Bearing in mind the ongoing task relating to the removal of informative references from the IPC scheme (see paragraph 21 of document IPC/CE/37/9 and, in particular, Task No. 3 of Annex IV to the said document), the Working Group recalled its decision at its fifteenth session that at a second stage Rapporteurs of definition projects which would be active at the end of 2007 should submit proposals for informative references that should be removed from the scheme (see paragraph 29 of document IPC/WG/15/4). The International Bureau would afterwards prepare the corresponding amendments to the scheme.

22. Compte tenu du caractère permanent de la tâche relative à la suppression des renvois indicatifs du schéma de la CIB (voir le paragraphe 21 du document IPC/CE/37/9 et, en particulier, la tâche n° 3 indiquée à l'annexe IV dudit document), le groupe de travail a rappelé la décision qu'il avait prise à sa onzième session, selon laquelle, dans un deuxième temps, les rapporteurs pour les projets relatifs aux définitions qui seraient en cours à la fin de l'année 2007 devraient inclure dans leurs propositions les renvois indicatifs qui devraient être supprimés du schéma (voir le paragraphe 29 du document IPC/WG/15/4). Le Bureau international établira ensuite les modifications correspondantes à apporter au schéma.

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: D143
	Subclass: G21G
GB Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 20/01/2009

Title – G21G

Conversion of chemical elements; Radioactive sources

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

- Arrangements for the conversion of chemical elements using electromagnetic radiation, corpuscular radiation or particle bombardment, including such arrangements not otherwise provided for in this subclass. Examples include systems for producing radioactive isotopes through neutron bombardment.
- Radioactive sources.
- Alleged conversion of chemical elements by chemical reaction.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

NONE.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Conversion of nuclear fuel in nuclear reactors	G21C

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Separation of different isotopes of the same element	B01D 59/00
Conversion of chemical elements by thermonuclear reactions in	G21B

nuclear reactors	
Applications of radiation in general	G21H 5/00
Handling particles or electromagnetic radiation not otherwise provided for	G21K
Irradiation devices	G21K 5/00
Producing neutrons or other subatomic particles, X- or gamma rays:	
• in fusion reactors	G21B
• in nuclear reactors	G21C
• by cosmic radiation	G21H 7/00
• in accelerometers	H05H
X-ray tubes	H01J 35/00
Gamma masers	H01S 4/00

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

The Canadian Intellectual Property Office CIPO OPIC L'Office de la propriété intellectuelle du Canada

Project Number	**:**	**D143**
Class/Subclass	**:**	**G21G**
Date	**:**	**October 23, 2008**

CA thanks the Rapporteur for the Initial proposal of Annex 3. CA would like to make several suggestions.

In the part "*Definition statement*" ("*This subclass covers:*"), the expression "Arrangements for the conversion of chemical elements using electromagnetic radiation…including such arrangements not otherwise provided for in this subclass" is a bit confusing. CA understands that the Rapporteur is trying to refer explicitly to the subject matter that will be covered by Main Group G21G 7/00. CA would suggest that the following sentence might better convey the Rapporteur's intention:

> Arrangements for the conversion of chemical elements, including but not limited to, arrangements using electromagnetic radiation, corpuscular radiation or particle bombardment.

CA also notes that the reference to G21K 5/00 ("Irradiation devices") is part of the "*Informative references*". CA feels that the distinction between irradiation devices (G21K 5/00) and the subject matter of Main Group G21G 1/00 can prove challenging in practice, due to the breadth of both main groups. This challenge is compounded by the existence of a third, closely related, classification place: G21C 23/00. In other words, CA finds that, in many practical cases, classifying subject matter where conversion of chemical elements takes place through irradiation in a nuclear-reactor environment is rather error-prone, and was wondering if the Definition could not provide some guidance.

Perhaps that a definition of "irradiation device" in the "*Glossary of terms*" could make the distinction more apparent, or a statement could be introduced, under "*This subclass does not cover*:", to highlight what subject matter is properly conversion of chemical elements (when obtained through irradiation), and what rather belongs to Main Group G21K 5/00. Alternatively, if it is felt that when an irradiation device is used to effect conversion of chemical elements, both subclasses G21G and G21K are relevant, this could be made explicit through a statement like "If an irradiation device is used to effect conversion of chemical elements, classification is also made in Subclass G21K, if the features of the irradiation device are of interest for search purposes." (possibly under "*Relationship between large subject matter areas*").

An informative reference to Main Group A61K 51/00 ("Preparations containing radioactive substances for use in therapy or testing in vivo") could prove useful.

In the part "Informative references" , the expression "in accelerometers" (corresponding to H05H) should be "in accelerators".

Claude Plante
Senior Patent Classification Examiner

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
IPC Revision Working Group	
Topic: G21G – D143	**Date:03 Dec 2008**

US appreciates the RP of Annex 3 and comments by CA in Annex 4.

Regarding CA's second paragraph, US agrees that additional guidance can only help the user's understanding of the classification system. However US believes that having a statement to explicitly classify in both places goes beyond the classification rules for G21G and G21K. We agree with the correction of H05H expression "in accelerators".

US suggests that A61M 36/00 and A61N 5/10 should be also added as a references.

[end]

JAPAN PATENT OFFICE

December 16, 2008

Project: D143 Subclass: G21G

JP Comment

JP thanks GB Rapporteur for the Initial Proposal of Definition (Annex 3) for subclass G21G. We have taken note of subsequent comments by CA and US.

JP has just one point to draw Rapporteur's attention. We have the following listing in the "Informative references" section in the Initial Proposal.

Conversion of chemical elements by thermonuclear reactions in nuclear reactors	G21B

However, JP believes that this "nuclear reactors" should be corrected to "fusion reactors".

JP fully supports proposals by CA and US.

[END]

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D143**	Subject: **Conversion of chemical elements; Radioactive Sources**	IPC range: **G21G**
Comments		30 January 2009

Ref.: Annexes 2-6 of project file

General

EPO supports CA comments, as well as US and JP ones (with some provisos, see below).

References relevant to classification in this subclass

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

The following references, with the given text, fit here (see also US and JP comments):

Applying radioactive material to the body	A61M 36/00
Radiation therapy using radioactive sources	A61N 5/10
Conversion of chemical elements by thermonuclear reactions in fusion reactors	G21B
Conversion of nuclear fuel in fission reactors	G21C
Applications of radiation from radioactive sources	G21H 5/00

However, the first two references above could be omitted, as they rather fit in the Definition of G21H or better G21H5/00 – the latter being "the" place for all applications of radioactive sources.

Informative references

In view of the above, 2nd and 3rd references should be removed from the list.

Roberto Iasevoli

UK Intellectual Property Office	**Rapporteur report**
Definition project D143 **Subclass G21G**	Date: 27/3/09

GB Rapporteur is most grateful to CA,US,JP and EP for the helpful comments in Annexes 4-7. A number of issues arise. The proposal in Annex 9 incorporates the changes outlined below.

Definition statement

CA suggests clarification of the first part of the definition statement with support from US,JP,EP. Rapporteur agrees that the alternative offered is a preferable form. The first part of the definition statement therefore reads more clearly as follows:

> "Arrangements for the conversion of chemical elements, including but not limited to, arrangements using electromagnetic radiation, corpuscular radiation or particle bombardment. Examples include systems for producing radioactive isotopes through neutron bombardment."

References

CA also highlights difficulty in identifying the distinction between G21G 1/00 and G21K 5/00 (Irradiation devices), further compounded by G21C 23/00 (Adaptations of reactors to facilitate experimentation or irradiation) and suggests further guidance is provided. It seems appropriate that this guidance falls under *"This subclass does not cover"* in an attempt to clarify the distinction between the above places. The following limiting references are therefore proposed with brief additional explanation:

*This **subclass** does not cover:*

Adaptations of reactors to facilitate experimentation or irradiation. Examples of such adaptations include modification of the reactor core to enable exposure of samples for investigative purposes.	G21C 23/00
Irradiation devices. These typically include arrangements to deliberately subject bodies or materials to ionising radiation in order to take advantage of known effects of the radiation thereon.	G21K 5/00

Several new informative references are suggested by CA, US for inclusion in the definition, notably A61K 51/00, A61M 36/00, A61N 5/10. The reference to A61K 51/00 has been added to the list of informative references.

However, EP suggests that the new references to A61M 36/00, A61N 5/10 and existing informative references to G21B (ie conversion of chemical elements by thermonuclear reactions) and G21H 5/00 should be regarded as limiting under *"Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system."* Furthermore, EP suggests the references to A61M 36/00 and A61N 5/10 could be omitted as they fit better in the definition for G21H, especially G21H 5/00.

Rapporteur accepts the rationale for EP's suggestions and, upon reflection, agrees that the references to A61M 36/00, A61N 5/10 and G21H 5/00 are better regarded as limiting as they clearly relate to radioactive sources 'used for a particular purpose.' As the term 'thermonuclear' relates specifically to fusion reactions, it follows that the G21B reference to conversion of chemical elements using such reactions should be regarded as limiting as subclass subject matter 'incorporated in a larger system'. Whilst Rapporteur understands EP's reasoning behind a suggestion to omit the references to A61M 36/00 and A61N 5/10 and move them to the G21H, these have been retained under this section of limiting references, as it is arguable that they also fit in G21G and helpfully serve to direct the user to the correct classification place.

In summary, the following limiting references are now included under *"Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system." :*

Applying radioactive material to the body	A61M 36/00
Radiation therapy using radioactive sources	A61N 5/10
Conversion of chemical elements by thermonuclear reactions in fusion reactors	G21B
Conversion of nuclear fuel in fission reactors	G21C
Application of radiation from radioactive sources	G21H 5/00

Resultant amendments have accordingly been made to the list of informative references.

Other matters

JP identified an error in the informative reference to G21B in Annex 3, which states 'Conversion of chemical elements by thermonuclear reactions in nuclear reactors'. As G21B relates only to fusion reactors, it is suggested that the term 'nuclear' is replaced with 'fusion'. This has been incorporated into the new proposal.

The term 'nuclear' has been more accurately replaced by 'fusion' and 'fission' in the limiting references to G21B and G21C respectively, as suggested.

Finally, in the informative reference to H05H, the term 'accelerometers' has been corrected to read 'accelerators'.

Jeremy Cowen

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: D143
	Subclass: G21G
GB Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 26/05/2009

Title – G21G

Conversion of chemical elements; Radioactive sources

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

- Arrangements for the conversion of chemical elements, including but not limited to, arrangements using electromagnetic radiation, corpuscular radiation or particle bombardment. Examples include systems for producing radioactive isotopes through neutron bombardment.
- Radioactive sources.
- Alleged conversion of chemical elements by chemical reaction.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

NONE.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Adaptations of reactors to facilitate experimentation or irradiation. Examples of such adaptations include modification of the reactor core to enable exposure of samples for investigative purposes.	G21C 23/00
Irradiation devices. These typically include arrangements to deliberately subject bodies or materials to ionising radiation in order to take advantage of known effects of the radiation thereon.	G21K 5/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Applying radioactive material to the body	A61M 36/00
Radiation therapy using radioactive sources	A61N 5/10
Conversion of chemical elements by thermonuclear reactions in fusion reactors	G21B
Conversion of nuclear fuel in fission reactors	G21C
Application of radiation from radioactive sources	G21H 5/00

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Preparations containing radioactive substances for use in therapy or testing in vivo	A61K 51/00
Separation of different isotopes of the same element	B01D 59/00
Handling particles or electromagnetic radiation not otherwise provided for	G21K
Producing neutrons or other subatomic particles, X- or gamma rays:	
• in fusion reactors	G21B
• in nuclear reactors	G21C
• by cosmic radiation	G21H 7/00
• in accelerators	H05H
X-ray tubes	H01J 35/00
Gamma masers	H01S 4/00

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

UK Intellectual Property Office	GB proposal
Definition project D143 **Subclass G21G**	Date: 3rd June 2009

Removal of informative references
All references in G21G have been considered. The table below proposes informative references to be removed from the scheme.

Ref place	Ref to	Category	Proposed action	Comments
G21G title	G21H 5/00	Limiting	None	
"	G21K	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	?
G21G 1/00	B01D 59/00	"	Remove to group definition	
"	G21B	Limiting	None	
"	G21C	"	"	
G21G 1/10	G21K	"	"	
G21G 1/12	G21H 5/00	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	
"	G21K 5/00	Limiting	None	
G21G 4/00	G21B	Informative	Remove to group definition	
"	G21C	"	"	
"	G21H 7/00	"	"	
"	H05H	"	"	
"	H01J 35/00	"	"	
"	H01S 4/00	"	"	
G21G 4/04	A61M 36/14	Limiting	None	
G21G 4/08	A61N 5/10	"	"	

Jeremy Cowen

IPC/D 167
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **WG** **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **G06K** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :**
RAPPORTEUR : **US**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **E** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	US	29.08.2007
2	Comments	Observations	BR	13.11.2007
3	Comments	Observations	DE	31.01.2008
4	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	US	25.02.2008
5	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	US	25.02.2008
6	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
7	Comments	Observations	JP	10.03.2008
8	Comments	Observations	EP	21.04.2008
9	Comments	Observations	DE	22.04.2008
10	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	US	21.05.2008
11	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	US	21.05.2008
12	Proposal	Proposition	US	21.05.2008
13	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	26.06.2008
14	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	US	21.08.2008
15	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	US	21.08.2008
16	Proposal	Proposition	US	21.08.2008
17	Comments	Observations	JP	11.09.2008

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
18	Comments	Observations	EP	01.10.2008
19	Comments	Observations	JP	10.10.2008
20	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	US	03.11.2008
21	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	US	03.11.2008
22	Proposal removal of non-limiting references	Proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs	US	03.11.2008
23	Comments	Observations	DE	21.11.2008
24	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	22.12.2008
25	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	30.12.2008
26	Comments	Observations	FR	04.02.2009
27	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	US	21.04.2009
28	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	US	21.04.2009
29	Comments	Observations	EP	27.04.2009
30	Comments	Observations	JP	25.05.2009
31	Comments	Observations	SE	29.05.2009

November 3, 2008

STATUS OF INFORMATIVE REFERENCES

Location of informative references in G06K scheme	Informative references to be deleted in G06K scheme	Relocated to Definition
G06K 1/02	B26F	Represented by B26F 1/00
G06K 1/10	H04L	Yes
G06K 1/12	B41	Represented by B41J
G06K 1/12	B41J	Yes
G06K 7/015	G11B	Represented by G11B 3/00
G06K 7/016	G11B	Represented by G11B 3/00
G06K 9/36	G06T	Yes
G06K 9/62	G06F 15/18	Yes
G06K 9/62	G06F 17/15	Yes
G06K 9/62	G06G 7/19	Yes
G06K 9/74	G06E 3/00	Yes
G06K 11/00	G01L	Yes
G06K 13/00	B65G	Yes
G06K 13/14	B42F	Represented by B42F 17/00
G06K 13/18	G11B	Yes
G06K 13/18	G11B 15/00	Yes
G06K 15/02	B41J	Yes
G06K 15/22	B43L 13/00	Yes
G06K 19/00	B23Q	Yes
G06K 19/00	B41	Represented by B41M
G06K 19/00	D03C	Yes
G06K 19/00	G10F	Yes
G06K 19/00	H04L	Yes
G06K 19/00	G11	Represented by G11B, G11C 16/00
G06K 21/06	B26F	Yes

ANNEX 24

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/16/3
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/16/3

23. In accordance with the decision on prioritizing definition projects taken at the fifteenth session of the Working Group (see document IPC/WG/15/4, paragraph 13(c)), it was also agreed that the following subclasses should receive priority for the creation of new definition projects in the future, when resources would be available: B22F, B23Q, B24B, B24C, B25B, B25D, B25F, B25H, B26D, B27B, B27G, B42D, B43L, B44B, B44F, B63B, B65G, E01C, E01F, E03D, E04C, E04F, E04G, E04H, G06K, H03K.

24. For all subclasses listed in paragraphs 22 and 23 above, the Rapporteurs of the respective definition project were invited to review, in the light of the comments submitted to projects R 701 to R 706, if a new residual main group was needed, or if the inclusion of further explanations, references or definitions for main groups would sufficiently clarify the exhaustion of the corresponding subclass by its main groups.

23. Conformément à la décision prise par le groupe de travail à sa quinzième session concernant l'ordre de priorité des projets de définition (voir le paragraphe 13.c) du document IPC/WG/15/4), il a également été convenu que les sous-classes ci-après devraient être prioritaires en ce qui concerne la création de nouveaux projets de définition à l'avenir, lorsque les ressources seront disponibles : B22F, B23Q, B24B, B24C, B25B, B25D, B25F, B25H, B26D, B27B, B27G, B42D, B43L, B44B, B44F, B63B, B65G, E01C, E01F, E03D, E04C, E04F, E04G, E04H, G06K, H03K.

24. Pour toutes les sous-classes énumérées aux paragraphes 22 et 23 ci-dessus, les rapporteurs des projets de définition correspondants ont été invités à examiner, compte tenu des observations formulées sur les projets R 701 à R 706, si un nouveau groupe principal résiduel était nécessaire, ou si l'introduction d'explications, de renvois ou de définitions supplémentaires pour les groupes principaux serait suffisante pour indiquer clairement que l'ensemble de la sous-classe correspondante est couverte par ses groupes principaux.

ANNEX 25

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2

Project D 167 (electrical) – The Working Group invited a further round of comments.

Projet D 167 (électricité) – le groupe de travail a demandé une nouvelle série d'observations.

INSTITUT NATIONAL DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INDUSTRIELLE FR – 28 janvier 2009

Projet IPC / **D167**
Sous-classe **G06K**
Réf : Annexes 19 (JP), 20 et 21 (US) et 25(IB)

OBSERVATIONS

Nous avons quelques remarques relatives à ce projet.

- **G06K** Rubrique **« Informative references** »

Un renvoi en H04B1/59 et 5/02 peut présenter un intérêt pour la recherche en plus du G01S13/75 qui implique une notion de détermination de distance ou de vitesse.

- **G06K 9/00** Rubrique **« Definition statement »**

3ième point :
L'expression 'Specific pattern' devient très générale et semble étendre la portée du groupe 9/00. Voir définition du terme 'Pattern' : 'data having a characteristic structure'.

De plus, il faudrait préciser ce qui est défini dans 'Computer vision' et 'Systems modelling visual' ; ces technologies ne font pas généralement partie du domaine couvert par G06K mais plutôt G06F ou G06T.

5ième point :
Les moyens de correction d'erreurs ne sont pas spécifiés dans le titre du 9/00. Généralement, ils sont prévus en G06F.

- **G06K 9/00** Rubrique **« Informative references »**

G02B : la désignation 'Optics' est très générale

H04B, H04L, H04W: "Wirelesss Data Communication"
H04B couvre également les 'Systèmes à lignes de transmission'

- **G06K 11/00** Rubrique **« Definition statement »**

Exemples très spécifiques et analogues à ceux donnés pour le G06F3/033 (renvois limitatifs)

- **G06K 19/00** Rubrique **« References relevant… »**

Il faut lire G01S13/75 au lieu de 13/78

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: D167
	Subclass: G06K
US Rapporteur Report	Date : April 21, 2009

Ref: Annex 23, 21 November 2008: DE Comments
Annex 24, 22 December 2008: Working Group Decision
Annex 26, 04 February 2009: FR Comments

Rapporteur wants to thank DE, IB, and FR for their comments.

1/ General Comments

As specified in the Working Group Decision [Annex 24], Rapporteur was invited to review if a new residual main group was needed for this project. Rapporteur believes a new residual main group is not required as the groups completely cover the subject matter defined by the subclass title.

2/ Referring to DE Comments

DE suggested to include "Scanning arrangements H04N 1/04" as an additional informative reference under the "Informative references" field of G06K 7/00. Rapporteur is in agreement with DE's suggestion and has adopted it (see Rapporteur Proposal, Annex 28).

3/ Referring to FR comments

A/ In light of FR's comments/remarks, Rapporteur has made the following changes, as reflected in Rapporteur Proposal [Annex 21]:

- "Responders; Transponders H04B 1/59" and "Near-field transmission systems using transceiver H04B 5/02" have been included as additional informative references under the "Informative references" field to the definition of G06K.
- Since "Computer Vision" and "Visual modelling systems" technologies are usually covered in G06T and G06F, as presented by FR, Rapporteur has deleted "computer vision, e.g. computations for (e.g. three-dimensional) image acquisition, systems modelling visual attention" from the 3rd point of the "Definition statement" for G06K 9/00.
- "Optics G02B" under the "Informative references" field for G06K 9/00 has been changed to "Optical elements, systems, or apparatus G02B".
- The designation of H04B for "Wireless Data Communication" under the "Informative references" field for G06K 9/00 has been deleted. The designation of H04L and H04W however has been maintained for "Wireless Data Communication". "Line transmission systems and Wireless Data Communication H04B" has been included as an additional informative reference under the "Informative references" field to the definition of G06K 9/00.
- "Hand-held input or output devices for transferring data to be processed into a form capable of being handled by a digital computer, e.g. light pens, joysticks, mice or trackballs G06F 3/033" under the "References relevant to classification in this group" field to the definition of G06K 11/00 has been deleted.

- "G01S 13/78" (Transponders powered by received radio waves, e.g. passive transponders) has been changed to "G01S 13/75" under the "References relevant to classification in this subgroup" field for G06K 19/00.

B/ FR makes a remark that the term "Specific pattern" as shown in the 3rd point of the "Definition statement" for G06K 9/00 is very general and appears to extend the scope of 9/00. While Rapporteur agrees with FR that the term "Specific pattern" alone appears to be very general, it is however that the examples (e.g. fingerprint or iris sensors) that follow the phrase "Image acquisition for specific patterns" as shown in the 3rd point places the specific patterns in a much more detailed/specific environment that is within the scope of G06K 9/00. Rapporteur therefore believes the scope of 9/00 has not been extended with "Image acquisition for specific patterns, e.g. fingerprint or iris sensors" under the "Definition statement" for G06K 9/00, and as such it should be maintained.

Further, Rapporteur has deleted "specific illumination" as shown in the 3rd point of the "Definition statement" for G06K 9/00. Rapporteur believes this subject matter is not covered in G06K 9/00.

C/ FR, in reference to the 5th point of the "Definition statement" for G06K 9/00, states that the means for corrected errors are not specified in 9/00 since they are planned in G06F. The particular features of detection or correction of errors for the methods or arrangements for reading or recognising printed or written characters or for recognising patterns are however within the scope of G06K 9/00 as evident with subgroup G06K 9/03 "Detection or correction of errors, e.g. by rescanning the pattern". Therefore, Rapporteur has maintained the "Means (e.g. specially adapted user interface) for correcting errors produced by computerised pattern recognition" under the "Definition statement" field for G06K 9/00. Take note that Rapporteur has deleted the phrase "or for designing computerised pattern recognition systems" as this particular feature is believed not covered in G06K 9/00.

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: D167
	Subclass: G06K
US Rapporteur Proposal	Date : April 21, 2009

Title - G06K

Recognition of data;

Presentation of data;

Record carriers;

Handling record carriers.

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

- **Methods or arrangements for reading or recognizing printed or written characters or for recognizing patterns, e.g. fingerprints; for graph-reading or for converting the pattern of mechanical parameters into electrical signals; for printing of data in the shape of alphanumeric or other characters from a record carrier; for verifying the correctness of markings on a record carrier; for sensing record carriers; and for marking the record carrier in digital fashion.**
- **Arrangements for producing a permanent visual presentation of the output data.**
- **Column-detection devices.**
- **Conveying record carriers from one station to another, e.g. from stack to punching mechanism.**
- **Record carriers for use with machines and with at least a part designed to carry digital markings.**
- **Information retrieval from punched cards designed for manual use or handling by machine, and apparatus for handling such cards, e.g. marking or correcting.**
- **Arrangements for preparing the data output from a computer for printing, e.g. computer or network printers insofar as they are involved in outputting the result of a computation, like a document.**

Relationship between large subject matter areas

NONE

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Printing per se	B41J

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Postal sorting	B07C
Hand-held input or output devices for transferring data to be processed into a form capable of being handled by a digital computer, e.g. light-pens, joysticks, mice or trackballs	G06F 3/033

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Transponders powered by received radio waves, e.g. passive transponders	G01S 13/75
Tags attached to, or associated with, an object, in order to enable detection of the object	G01V 15/00
Responders; Transponders	H04B 1/59
Near-field transmission systems using transceiver	H04B 5/02

Special rules of classification within this subclass

G06K 17/00 covers methods or arrangements for effecting co-operative working between equipments covered by two or more main groups G06K 1/00-G06K 15/00.

G06K 9/00 takes precedence over G06K 7/00.

G06K 19/00 takes precedence over G06K 21/00.

G06K 9/58 takes precedence over groups G06K 9/38-G06K 9/54.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

record carrier	means a body, such as a cylinder, disc, card, tape, or wire, capable of permanently holding information, which can be read-off by a sensing element movable relative to the recorded information or by electrical contacting or non-contacting means
data	is a synonym for information

Synonyms and Keywords

*In patent documents the following expressions/words "**data**", and "**information**" are often used as synonyms.*

G06K 1/00

Methods or arrangements for marking the record carrier in digital fashion

Definition statement

This group covers:

Marking on cards, tapes, sheets, tickets or the like insomuch as the digital marking method or arrangements are specific, e.g.:

- punching, e.g. punching cards or tapes
- printing, e.g. printing a bar code on a label or ticket
- transferring data from one record carrier to another, e.g. duplicating punch cards, converting a universal product code (UPC) or universal code council -12 (UPC-12) bar code into an electronic product code (EPC)

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Methods or arrangements for sensing record carriers	G06K 7/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Working by laser beam	B23K 26/00
Perforating or punching in general	B26F 1/00
Printing in general	B41J
Printing data from a record carrier, e.g. interpreting or printing-out from a magnetic tape	G06K 3/00
Recording by magnetisation or demagnetisation of a record carrier	G11B 5/00
Recording by optical means, e.g. recording using thermal beam of optical radiation	G11B 7/00
Transmission of digital information	H04L

G06K 3/00

Methods or arrangements for printing of data in the shape of alphanumeric or other characters from a record carrier, e.g. interpreting, printing-out from a magnetic tape

Definition statement

This group covers:

- Translating markings on a record carrier into printed data on the same record carrier.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Printing, duplicating, marking or copying processes	B41M
Transferring data from one type of record carrier on to another type of record carrier, e.g. from magnetic tape to punched card	G06K 1/18

G06K 5/00

Methods or arrangements for verifying the correctness of markings on a record carrier; Column-detection devices

Definition statement

This group covers:

- verifying forming a part of the marking action
- verifying the alignment of markings

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Testing patterns on paper currency, securities, bonds, or similar valuable papers to determine their identity or genuineness	G07D 7/20
Verification of coded identity or credit cards in mechanisms actuated by them	G07F 7/12

G06K 7/00

Methods or arrangements for sensing record carriers

Definition statement

This group covers:

Sensing record carriers by

- pneumatic or hydraulic means, e.g. by compressed air
- sonic means
- mechanical means
- current, e.g. contact brush on a conductive mark
- electrostatic or magnetic means
- corpuscular radiation
- optical means
- other electromagnetic radiation, e.g. microwaves

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Methods or arrangements for marking the record carrier in digital fashion	G06K 1/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Devices for scanning or checking printed matter for quality control	B41F 33/00
Transponders powered by received radio waves, e.g. passive transponders	G01S 13/78
Tags attached to, or associated with, an object, in order to enable detection of the object	G01V 15/00
Error detection or correction by redundancy in data representation, e.g. by using checking codes	G06F 11/08
Reproducing by mechanical sensing	G11B 3/00
Scanning arrangements	H04N 1/04

G06K 9/00

Methods or arrangements for reading or recognising printed or written characters or for recognising patterns, e.g. fingerprints

Definition statement

This group covers:

- The (computerised) recognition of specific patterns, e.g. printed or written characters, documents, scenery, audiovisual content, medical or industrial images, biometric patterns (e.g. gait).
- General (computerised) recognition functions such as extracting features, clustering, classifying or matching patterns, segmenting images, or separating (signal or image) sources.
- Image acquisition for specific patterns, e.g. fingerprint or iris sensors.
- Image pre-processing, e.g. image thinning, noise filtering.
- Means (e.g. specially adapted user interface) for correcting errors produced by computerised pattern recognition; means for assisting humans in presenting patterns (e.g. positioning a finger) for computerised recognition.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Processing or analysis of tracks of nuclear particles	G01T 5/02
Methods or arrangements for graph-reading or for converting the pattern of mechanical parameters, e.g. force or presence, into electrical signals	G06K 11/00
Speech recognition	G10L 15/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Detecting, measuring or recording for diagnostic purposes	A61B 5/00
Identification of persons by non-computerised means, e.g. finger-printing (developing latent fingerprints with chemicals)	A61B 5/117
Postal sorting	B07C
Programme-controlled manipulators	B25J 9/00
Testing machines or structures	G01M
Investigating or analysing materials by determining their chemical or physical properties	G01N
Radar and similar techniques	G01S
Geophysics	G01V
Photomechanical production of textured or patterned surfaces, e.g. for printing, for processing of semiconductor devices	G03F
Input arrangements for interaction between user and computer	G06F 3/01
Handling natural language data	G06F 17/20
Information retrieval	G06F 17/30
Digital computing for specific applications	G06F 19/00
Security arrangements	G06F 21/00
Data processing for business purposes, logistics, stock management	G06Q
Devices for testing patterns on paper currency, securities, bonds, or similar valuable papers to determine their identity or genuineness	G07D 7/20
Intruder alarms using image scanning and comparing means	G08B 13/194
Traffic control systems for road vehicles	G08G 1/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Optical elements, systems, or apparatus	G02B
Control or regulating systems in general	G05B
Optical analogue correlation	G06E 3/00
Comparing digital values	G06F 7/02
Learning machines	G06F 15/18
Fourier, Walsh or analogous domain transformations	G06F 17/14
Digital correlation	G06F 17/15

Computer-aided design	G06F 17/50
Analogue correlation	G06G 7/19
Computer systems based on specific computational models	G06N
Image data processing or generation, in general	G06T
Labels, tag tickets or similar identification or indication means	G09F 3/00
Semiconductor devices	H01L
Impedance networks, e.g. resonant circuits; resonators	H03H
Coding or decoding in general	H03M
Line transmission systems and Wireless Data Communication	H04B
Wireless Data Communication	H04L, H04W
Secret or secure communication	H04L 9/00
Scanning, transmission or reproduction of documents, e.g. facsimile transmission	H04N 1/00
Studio circuitry	H04N 5/222
Closed circuit television systems	H04N 7/18
Systems for the transmission of television signals using bandwidth reduction	H04N 7/26

Glossary of terms

In this, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

recognising	detecting, identifying, labelling, authenticating, inspecting, tracking or the like by functions such as segmentation, feature extraction or selection, source separation, clustering, matching, classification or by other signal, image or statistical processing
pattern	data having a characteristic structure
feature extraction	deriving descriptive data, e.g. statistical principal components or image shape characteristics, from one or more patterns
clustering	extracting structure from a set of patterns, i.e. grouping patterns according to their similarity or closeness

G06K 11/00

Methods or arrangements for graph-reading or for converting the pattern of mechanical parameters, e.g. force or presence, into electrical signals

Definition statement

This group covers:

- Devices for converting the position of a manually operated writing or tracing member into an electrical signal, e.g. hand-held sensing devices like light-pens, joysticks, mice or trackballs.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

Input arrangements for transferring data to be processed into a form capable of being handled by the computer; Output arrangements for transferring data from processing unit to output unit, e.g. interface arrangements	G06F 3/00

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Graph-reading or converting the pattern of mechanical parameters, e.g. force or presence, into electrical signals combined with character or pattern recognition	G06K 9/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Feelers for copying devices on machine tools	B23Q 35/00
Systems for transmitting the position of an object with respect to a predetermined reference system, e.g. tele-autographic system	G08C 21/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Accessories for games using an electronically generated display	A63F 13/02
Arrangements for measuring areas	G01B
Measuring force	G01L

G06K 13/00

Conveying record carriers from one station to another, e.g. from stack to punching mechanism

Definition statement

This group covers:

Conveying cards, e.g.

- feeding or discharging cards

- maintaining a card in position
- injecting a contact card into readers

Conveying punched tapes, e.g.

- winding up or unwinding of tapes

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Conveying record carriers combined with another operation, e.g. with reading	G06K 17/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Card-filing arrangements, e.g. card indexes or catalogues or filing cabinets	B42F 17/00
Transport devices in general	B65G
Handling thin or filamentary material, e.g. sheets, webs or cables, in general	B65H
Information storage based on relative movement between record carrier and transducer	G11B
Magnetic-tape drive	G11B 15/00

G06K 15/00

Arrangements for producing a permanent visual presentation of the output data

Definition statement

This group covers:

- Producing a permanent visual presentation of the output information, e.g. using printers or plotters.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Printing or plotting combined with another operation, e.g.	G06K 17/00

with conveying	

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Receipt-giving machines	G07G 5/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Printers per se	B41J
Plotters per se	B43L 13/00

G06K 17/00

Methods or arrangements for effecting co-operative working between equipments covered by two or more of the preceding main groups, e.g. automatic card files incorporating conveying and reading operations

Definition statement

This group covers:

- Reading combined with writing of identification or authentication codes on record carriers.
- Reading of codes combined with conveying of carriers.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

G06K 19/00

Record carriers for use with machines and with at least a part designed to carry digital markings

Definition statement

This group covers:

Punched cards.

Cards provided with conductive marks, printed circuits or chips, e.g.

- banking, credit or identity cards including magnetic strips or IC's
- cards provided with bar codes printed with conductive ink
- cards comprising pencil markings to be sensed by their conductivity
- cards carrying resonating (passive) LC circuits or RDIF tags

Record carriers carrying digital markings of different kinds, e.g. one marking being sensed by optical means and the other by magnetic means, e.g.:

- copy-protected CD's or DVD's comprising a RFID transponder incorporated in the CD or DVD body

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

File cards	B42F 19/00
Transponders powered by received radio waves, e.g. passive transponders	G01S 13/75
Tags attached to, or associated with, an object, in order to enable detection of the object	G01V 15/00
Protection against unauthorized use of computer memory	G06F 12/14
Mechanisms activated by coded credit or identity cards for the purpose of vending or hiring goods or services	G07F 7/08
Verification of coded identity or credit cards in mechanisms actuated by them	G07F 7/12
Arrangements activated by coded cards for dispensing or	G07F 19/00

receiving money and posting such transactions to existing accounts, e.g. ATM's (automatic teller machines)	
Using a coded card to authorize calls from a telephone set	H04M 1/675

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Holders, etuis or cases for credit cards or the like	A45C 11/18, A45C 11/24
Details, components, or accessories for machine tools, e.g. arrangements for copying or controlling; machine tools in general, characterized by the construction of particular details or components; combinations or associations of metal working machines, not directed to a particular result	B23Q
Printing, duplicating, marking or copying processes; colour printing	B41M
Identity, credit, cheque or like information-bearing cards as printed matter of special format or style not otherwise provided for	B42D 15/10
Shedding mechanisms; pattern cards or chains; punching of cards; designing patterns	D03C
Labels, tag tickets or similar identification or indicating means	G09F 3/00
Automatic musical instruments	G10F
Record carriers in general	G11B
Erasable programmable read-only memories	G11C 16/00
Transmission of digital information, e.g. telegraphic communication	H04L

G06K 21/00

Information retrieval from punched cards designed for manual use or handling by machine; Apparatus for handling such cards, e.g. marking or correcting

Definition statement

This group covers:

- **Information retrieval from punched cards designed for manual use or handling by machine.**
- **Apparatus for handling punched cards, e.g. marking or correcting.**

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Tools for perforating in general	B26F

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: D167
	Subclass: G06K
EPO Comments	Date: 27 April 2009

Ref Annex 26, 04 February 2009: FR Comments
Annex 27, 21 April 2009: RRapporteur Report
Annex 28, 21 April 2009: Rapporteur Proposal

General comments

The recent discussion initiated by FR makes EPO aware that the definition statement for G06K9 may be unclear because too concise in comparison with the large number of subgroups in G06K9, so that it needs to be expanded and clarified. EPO has several comments regarding the recent discussion, in particular regarding "computer vision" (EPO thinks that this is covered by G06K9 as part of the image-related IPC subgroups of G06K9, and not to G06T, which relates instead to general image processing or computer graphics). This moves EPO to propose a clearer, expanded definition statement and adding the item "computer vision" to the glossary. EPO then uses this opportunity to propose adding an item which is not explicitly covered by G06K9 (and the less elsewhere) but which EPO thinks fits best under G06K9: "data fusion".

Expression "Specific Patterns" (definition statement)

While not covering the processing of specific signals covered elsewhere (e.g. G10L, G01S), G06K9 covers the processing of specific images as shown by the examples given in the title of the main group. This is not the case of G06T which relates only to images "in general", thus independently of their nature. Hence EPO agrees with US Rapporteur.

However EPO thinks that FR has a point regarding the acquisition of specific images, some of which may not be covered by G06K9 (e.g. it may rather be covered by A61B for medical images, G01N for industrial images). Hence a distinction between specific acquisition and specific processing would be an improvement which EPO proposes as part of a reworked definition statement (which EPO thinks is necessary regarding computer vision).

(EPO remarks that the nature of images has usually no relevance for general image processing (G06T) whereas image recognition is strongly dependent on the specific features and thus on the specific nature of images: it makes sense that G06K9 and not G06T covers specific processing functions for specific images.)

Definition of the word "Pattern" (glossary)

EPO thinks that such a general definition cannot be avoided because G06K9/62 or G06K9/74 cover the fundamental pattern recognition techniques, e.g. techniques operating on n-tuples (e.g. vectors) corresponding to extracted features. Many of these very fundamental pattern recognition techniques are suitable for any kind of patterns, hence the word pattern has a very broad meaning in this context. Moreover EPO thinks that this definition is not problematic as the word "pattern" is

accompanied by the word "recognising", thus unequivocally referring to the techniques of the field of "pattern recognition".

Interactive Pattern Recognition (definition statement)

EPO agrees with the US Rapporteur that G06K9 covers error detection and correction related to pattern recognition (G06K9/03). However EPO disagrees that the phrase "designing computerised pattern recognition systems" is not covered by G06K9. EPO cannot see why this would not relate to pattern recognition nor can see what field would have precedence and cover better the design of pattern recognition systems than the field of pattern recognition itself. EPO wishes this phrase to be reinserted.

Computer Vision (definition statement)

Computer Vision (or Machine Vision) refers to a broad field which aims, by analogy with human vision, at building systems/methods covering a whole chain of computations regarding images of scenes or scenery objects, when these images are optically acquired without physical contact between the sensor and the object or scene:
- image acquisition (see G06K9/20);
- image preprocessing (see G06K9/36);
- image feature extraction (see G06K9/46);
- image understanding / recognition (see G06K9/62-72, esp. 64 and 68).

Computer Vision has a very strong overlap with image recognition so that it is normally associated with image recognition and that it would not make much sense to separate it from pattern recognition. Actually the whole chain of subgroups from G06K9/20 to G06K9/58, G06K9/64, G06K9/68 and the systems covered by G06K9/60, G06K9/78-82 are not limited to the case where the image is acquired by a contact sensor but cover also the case when the image(s) is acquired by cameras, i.e. it covers the modules and the systems of computer vision.

Regarding G06T, the image generation groups G06T11, 15 and 17 and their subgroups deal explicitly with the techniques of the field called "computer graphics" ("infographie" in French; relating to image creation based on models or user edition) and are definitely different from the techniques of the field of computer vision which can be found in G06K9/20-G06K9/60, 64, 68, 78-82.

Furthermore the groups under fields such G06K and H04N have precedence over those of G06T as is shown by the limiting links in the title of G06T.

In view of the many subgroups under G06K9, the necessity to make the distinction with G06T clearer and the strong activity in the field, EPO thinks that there is need for an expanded definition statement for G06K9 (see proposal below) and the addition of "computer vision" in the glossary.

Data fusion

No distinct place is foreseen in the Classification titles for the technique of data fusion. EPO thinks that, according to the following technical considerations, G06K9/62 is the most appropriate place (under item 92. of the IPC Guide):

- pattern recognition strongly involves data fusion, e.g.: multimodal biometric recognition based on fingerprints, finger vascular patterns and facial images; gesture recognition based on body image and accelerometers signals; TV program recognition based on audio and visual data; driver behaviour recognition based on eye images and on car signals, etc.;
- fusion computations are intertwined with pattern recognition computations;
- the techniques of general pattern recognition and of data fusion involve the same kinds of statistical computations.

Hence EPO wishes this to be indicated in the definition statement.

Proposal for amended definition statement of G06K9

EPO proposes the following expanded definition, with indication of subgroups.

G06K9 – Definition statement

This group covers:

- Fundamental, computerised recognition functions operating on general data, general images or general signals (e.g. represented by n-tuples such as vectors): statistical feature extraction, source separation, clustering, classification, pattern matching (G06K9/62, 70-76).
- Data fusion, i.e. computations for merging heterogeneous data, e.g. various kinds of images, signal, or data derived therefrom (features, classification results).
- Computational functions operating on images, may the images be acquired by contact sensors, or may the images be acquired by cameras as in the case of computer vision, which functions could be part (modules, processing steps or stages) of an image recognition system, even when the function is taken alone without the global recognition context (G06K9/20-60, 64,68):
  - whole artificial vision systems, e.g. systems modelling (mimicking human or animal) visual attention (G06K9/60, G06K9/78-82);
  - computations for image acquisition (G06K9/20) such as those of low- or mid-level computer vision: deriving three-dimensional information from images of scenes subject to specific illumination patterns; aligning or centering the image-pickup (G06K9/32), e.g. computations for camera calibration such as those related to the projection matrices; aligning images (G06K9/32), e.g. computations for image registration, for stitching neighbouring images, for aligning multiple image views based on projective geometry or for stereo matching or epipolar geometry; image centering (G06K9/32), e.g. object detection or tracking in images; image segmentation (G06K9/34); detecting edges or contours from the image (G06K9/46);
  - certain image processing functions such as statistical computations for image noise filtering (G06K9/40);
  - computations, such as those of mid- or high-level vision, for extracting image features, e.g. descriptors (G06K9/46) such as those based on object contour, e.g. deriving shape models (G06K9/48); deriving mathematical or geometrical properties of the image (G06K9/52);
  - computations, such as those of high-level vision, for image recognition, e.g. image matching (G06K9/64, G06K9/68).
- The above-mentioned computations when specific for specific kinds of images or movements:
  - printed or written characters, images of documents;
  - biometric patterns except speech: fingerprints; images of the whole (human or animal) body or of parts thereof such as faces, eyes, vascular patterns; human movements such as handwritten signatures or gait;
  - scenes and audiovisual content: aerial images, indoor images, outdoor images, surveillance images, road images, television content;

- industrial images;
- medical images, microscopic objects.

- Specific acquisition arrangements for certain specific patterns such as: printed characters, handwriting, fingerprints; also faces, body or eyes but when specific for computerised recognition.
- Means (e.g. specially adapted user interface) for correcting errors produced by computerised pattern recognition (G06K9/03) or for designing computerised pattern recognition systems (G06K9/62); means for assisting humans in presenting patterns (e.g. positioning a finger) for computerised recognition (G06K9/20).

Proposal for amended glossary of terms of G06K9

EPO wishes to add a definition for "computer/machine vision"

G06K 9/00 – Glossary of terms

In this group, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

computer/machine vision	computations involved in the recognition of objects or of scenes or in the understanding of scenes when these computations are applied to data obtained from one or more image cameras, i.e. when the images of the objects or scene are optically acquired without physical contact the sensor(s) and the objects
recognising	detecting, identifying, labelling, authenticating, inspecting, tracking or the like by functions such as segmentation, feature extraction or selection, source separation, clustering, matching, classification or by other signal, image or statistical processing
pattern	data having a characteristic structure
feature extraction	deriving descriptive data, e.g. statistical principal components or image shape characteristics, from one or more patterns
clustering	extracting structure from a set of patterns, i.e. grouping patterns according to their similarity or closeness

JAPAN PATENT OFFICE May 25, 2009

Project: D167 Subclass: G06K

JP Comment

This is with reference to the recent discussion in US Rapporteur Report (Annex 27), US Proposal Modification (Annex 28) and EP comment (Annex 29).

1. Definition Statement for G06K 9/00

As was claimed time and again in the past, JP considers that the subject matters to be covered by the description of *"or for recognising patterns, e.g. fingerprints"* in the current title of main group G06K 9/ are running over the scope of subclass G06K as well as of main group G06K 9/00.

This is because the term *"data"* in the phrase of *"recognition of data"* in the title of subclass G06K means such data as printed or written characters that were artificially generated on the assumption that the recognition will be made thereof. It does not cover fingerprints or natural images as in computer vision that were not artificially generated.

Accordingly, in compliance with the general rule of IPC that the scope of main groups must be limited within the scope of subclass, "Methods or arrangements for reading or recognising printed or written characters" should be the substantial scope of G06K 9/00.

In other words, the definitions of G06K 9/00 as proposed by US Rapporteur and as counter-proposed by EPO must be rectified since both of them contain other subject matters than those comprehensible from the subclass title.

For the classification of subject matters relating to the recognition of natural images as abovementioned, each of the corresponding field of application should be used. For some subject matters for which the field of application is not determinable, classification should be given in <u>G06T</u> as being related to <u>the image data processing in general</u>.

The abovementioned fields of application extend to a vast range of technology. It must be realized that the documents that could fall in the classification definition as proposed by EPO/USPTO are scattered among too wide a range for us to be graspable.

If the scope of G06K 9/00 is expanded as per the proposed classification definition by EPO/USPTO, it would become necessary, not only to undergo the intellectual reclassification for collecting widely-scattered documents, but also to effect the restructuring of examination system itself in JPO. There are definitely no resources in the JPO for giving reclassified symbols to all of the affected cases, after collecting enormous number of scattered documents and after re-establishing the new classification system to cope with the expanded scope and re-organizing the examination system to accord with the new classification system.

In the circumstances, JP cannot but repeat the claim already made in Annex 17 and 19 in proposing the following Definition Statement for G06K 9/00.

- General recognition functions such as extracting features, clustering, classifying or matching patterns or separating image sources for recognizing printed or written characters.
- Specific acquisition for reading and recognising printed or written characters.
- Specific pre-processing for recognising printed or written characters.

2. Definition Statement for G06K

In the same sense as was claimed in 1, above, the first item of Definition Statement for subclass G06K itself should also be rectified so as to avoid containing other subject matters than those intended by *"Recognition of data."*

[END]

Swedish Patent and Registration Office

IPC Definition Project D167, subclass G06K **29-05-2009**

Comments
(Relating to annexes 16, 27, 28 and 29)

SE thanks US for the work done so far. SE has quite at lot of comments on the proposal, annexes 27 and 28, and EP comments, annex 29. SE apologizes for the late submission of these comments.

One big remark that SE has on the proposal is that the borders with other subclasses are not clearly defined. Especially the boarder between G06K and G11 should be defined both at subclass level and at main group level (G06K 19/00). According to the references in G11B, GO6K relates to the scope of "recording or playback apparatus using mechanically marked tape". This means that G06K merely should consist of mechanically marked tape. Is this really true? How about G06K 19/00, which relates to digital markings? According to the title of G06K, the subclass relates to record carriers. The title is obviously not entirely correct since record carriers could be so much more than punched tapes and cards. SE does not have the expertise in this area to fully define the relationships between other subclasses, but SE believes that it is an important work that needs to be done.

Comment relating to G06K, informative references:
In the list relating to places which may be of interest for search, a reference is made to passive transponders. SE wonders if there should not be an additional reference to places which may be of interest for search regarding active transponders? This comment is also relevant for G06K 19/00.

Comment relating to G06K, special rules of classification:
The last rule "G06K 9/58 takes precedence over groups G06K 9/38 –G06K9/54" is only valid within one main group, G06K 9, and the rule should be in that main group definition.

Comment relating to G06K, glossary of terms:
SE discovered that 'data' is added in the *glossary of terms* and the explanation given is that it 'is a synonym for information'. It is also stated below *synonyms and keywords* that data and information often are used as synonyms. SE believes that it is only necessary to have one of these clarifications. It should either be stated below *glossary of terms* or below *synonyms and keywords.* According to 'Guidelines for drafting classification definitions', terms that are found exclusively in patent documents or technical literature should appear below *synonyms and keywords,* while terms found in the scheme or definition statement should appear below *glossary of terms.* Therefore, SE believes that 'data' should only appear below *glossary of terms.*

Comment relating to G06K 1/00, definition statement:
SE believes that the words "the like" should be changed to "similar record carriers" and that the word "specific" should be changed to "specially adapted". Hence, the first two lines in the definition statement should be changed to "Marking on cards, tapes, sheets, tickets or similar record carriers insomuch as the digital marking method or arrangements are specially adapted, e.g."

Comment relating to G06K 1/00, references relevant to classification in this group:
SE is of the opinion that the reference to G06K 7/00 is merely an informative reference since sensing cannot be classified at G06K 1/00.

Comment relating to G06K 3/00, definition statement:
SE believes that the statement is inaccurate since it only covers the subgroup. SE thinks that it is better to have no statement than an inaccurate one.

Comment relating to G06K 5/00, definition statement:
SE believes that the statement is inaccurate since it only covers the subgroup. SE thinks that it is better to have no statement than an inaccurate one.

Comment relating to G06K 7/00, definition statement:
The list looks exhaustive but SE is of the opinion that an "e.g." could be added before the list to fully cover the main group. SE also believes that a definition regarding "sensing" is necessary. It should be clarified that "sensing" means reading the content of the information carrier and not just sensing its presence.

Comment relating to G06K 7/00, informative references:
The second reference in the list 'Transponders powered by received radio waves, e.g. passive transponders' refers to G01S 13/78 which is incorrect. The reference should be changed to G01S 13/75 instead.

Comment relating to G06K 7/00, references relevant to classification in this group:
SE is of the opinion that the reference to G06K 1/00 is merely an informative reference since marking cannot be classified at G06K 7/00.

Comments relating to G06K 9/00, in general:
SE agrees with EP, annex 29, that 'computer vision' is covered by G06K 9/00 and that it should be added in the glossary.

Regarding 'data fusion' SE agrees with EP that it fits under G06K9, but SE has some concerns regarding whether 'data fusion' should be classified only in relation to recognition of data. If 'data fusion' is to become a part of G06K9, SE agrees that G06K 9/62 is an appropriate place for classification.

SE is in favour of the definition statement proposal added by EP in annex 29. SE believes that the proposal is exhaustive and distinct. Although, as pointed out above, SE is not sure that 'data fusion' should not be classified in other places which relate to other subject matter than 'reading or recognising printed or written characters…'.

Comments relating to G06K 9/00, definition statement:
SE would like to add "specially adapted" to paragraph 3 and 4 in the list. SE also believes that an s in missing in the word interface in the last paragraph, it should say "user interfaces" instead. Paragraph 3 and 4 should read as follows:
• Image acquisition specially adapted for specific patterns, e.g. fingerprint or iris sensors.
• Image pre-processing specially adapted for specific patterns, e.g. image thinning, noise filtering.

Comment relating to G06K 9/00, references relevant to classification in this group:
SE is of the opinion that the references to G01T 5702 and G01L 15/00 is merely informative references. It also seems like several of the references in the list 'examples of places where the subject matter of this class is…' are merely informative. SE is also concerned about the

reference to A61B 5/117 and wonders if this is a true reflection of the borderline? Would the examiners working in A61B 5/117 accept it?

Comment relating to G06K 9/00, glossary of terms:
SE believes that the definition of clustering should be clarified by adding "a common". Hence, the definition should be "extracting a common structure from a set of patterns, i.e. grouping patterns according to their similarity or closeness"

Comment relating to G06K 11/00, definition statement:
The definition statement for G06K 11/00 only covers one 11/06. The statement is very inaccurate since 11/02 has the title "automatic curve followers" and according to the statement only "manually operated" should be classified in this main group.

As a further remark, the current definition statement for G06K 11/00 is also very similar to G06F3/033 which regards 'Pointing devices displaced or positioned by the user, e.g. mice, trackballs, pens or joysticks'. SE believes that it is confusing to use the same examples for two different subject matters. It should be clearly defined which subject matter that is to be classified below G06K 11/00, without taking the examples relating to G06F3/03. Perhaps there is also a need for adding a more specific reference regarding G06F3/033 in 'relationship between larger subject matter areas'.

Therefore, SE believes that the definition statement should be re-written.

Comment relating to G06K 11/00, relationship between larger subject matter areas:
This section is not properly used since the standard format for entries in this section is running text. The information looks more like a reference than a clarification of a relationship.

Comment relating to G06K 11/00, informative references:
The wording of the reference regarding G11B 15/00 is not consistent with the title of G11B 15/00 in the scheme. Perhaps 'Magnetic tape-drive' should be given as an example after the title in the list instead?

Comments relating to G06K 13/00, definition statement:
SE wonders if the definition statement is accurate. The statement only covers the two subgroups and SE is concerned that the main group covers more than just these aspects. There are several kinds of record carriers.

Comments relating to G06K 15/00, definition statement:
SE believes that the current definition statement covers any printing, which is not very helpful. The definition statement should contain statements regarding areas which are specific about the scope of this group.

Comments relating to G06K 17/00, definition statement:
The statement does not fully cover the subject matter of the main group. Group 9/00 is not covered and it appears as if the statement is broader than the scope of the title which only deals with "effecting co-operative working between equipments".

Comments relating to G06K 19/00, in general:
SE believes that a section for relationship should be added. That section should contain the information in the first reference after the main group title.

Comments relating to G06K 19/00, definition statement:

The statement only covers the three two-dot groups 19/063, 19/067 and 19/08 and not the entire scope of the main group.

Comment relating to G06K 19/00, references relevant to classification in this group:
SE believes that the first reference in the list, to B42F 19/00, points the wrong way. B42F is the broader place. All other references given in this section looks informative and should hence be moved to the next section.

Comment relating to G06K 21/00, references relevant to classification in this group:
SE is of the opinion that this group overlap with at least 9/00 and 13/00. It should be clarified what the relationship between these main groups is. The word “handling” in the title is obviously not used in the meaning standardized in the Guide.

The precedence reference to 19/00 must be reflected here.

Comment relating to annex 16:
SE agrees with the list of informative references and SE supports that these references should be moved to the definition. However, G01B is missing in the list. The informative reference is included in the definition (page 10, annex 28) but is not in the list of informative references in annex 16.

Sofia Sjögren

IPC/D 170
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **WG** **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **G08G** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **E** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Proposal	Proposition	IB	17.09.2007
2	Comments	Observations	US	31.01.2008
3	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
4	Comments	Observations	BR	13.06.2008
5	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	26.06.2008
6	Comments	Observations	JP	07.07.2008
7	Comments	Observations	US	11.09.2008
8	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	13.01.2009

Definitions	Project: D058
	G08G
Second EP Proposal	Date: 20 September 2005

Title - G08G

Traffic control systems

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Identification of traffic offenders.

Indicating the position of vehicles for traffic control purposes.

Navigation systems for traffic control purposes, i.e. systems in which the navigation is not performed autonomously by or in the vehicles, but where the vehicles are guided by instructions transmitted to them.

Indication of free spaces in parking areas.

Control of platoons.

Control of the admission or release of vehicles to or from platoons.

Organisation of vehicles within platoons, involving an exchange of information between the control system and the vehicles, i.e. the number of vehicles, acceptance or refusal of new vehicles in the platoon and where in the platoon the new vehicle may be inserted.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

G08G is the general function-oriented place covering methods and apparatus for controlling vehicle traffic.

B60W 30/00 is related to road vehicle drive control systems, e.g. for on-board systems using traffic information received by on-board receiving equipment, for vehicles under the control of a human driver for transportation on roads ("road vehicles"); these systems only controlling the movement of a single vehicle.

Limiting references

This subclass does not cover:

Guiding railway traffic, ensuring the safety of railway traffic	B61L
Marking of navigational route	B63B22/16, B63B51/00

Landing aids fitted in or to aircraft	B64D 45/04
Visual or acoustic landing aids	B64F 1/18
Arrangement of road signs or traffic signals	E01F 9/00
Radar or analogous systems, designed for traffic control	G01S 13/91
Sonar or lidar systems specially designed for traffic control	G01S 15/88, G01S 17/88

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Road vehicle cruise control for controlling the distance between vehicles	B60W 30/16

Glossary

In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

Platoon	means a convoy of vehicles which is controlled as a whole by exchange of data or information between the vehicles themselves (i.e. inter-vehicle communication) or with one or more external sources (i.e. central source or distributed sources).

United States Patent and Trademark Office

Project: D170 Subclass – G08G Date 31 January 2008

Comments

US thanks R for the comprehensive definition proposal.

US notes that the “controlling of traffic signals” (groups 1/07-1/087) does not appear to be covered by the definition.

In the Definition Statement, it is stated that the subclass covers controls for platoons, admission or release of vehicles to or from platoons, and organization of platoons. It is questioned which groups in G08G cover this subject matter.

It is suggested that the following limiting references be added:

Sonar systems designed for anti-collision purposes	G01S 15/93
Lidar systems designed for anti-collision purposes	G01S 17/93
Radar or analogous systems, designed for anti-collision purposes	G01S 13/93

ANNEX 03

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/18/4
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/18/4

22. Bearing in mind the ongoing task relating to the removal of informative references from the IPC scheme (see paragraph 21 of document IPC/CE/37/9 and, in particular, Task No. 3 of Annex IV to the said document), the Working Group recalled its decision at its fifteenth session that at a second stage Rapporteurs of definition projects which would be active at the end of 2007 should submit proposals for informative references that should be removed from the scheme (see paragraph 29 of document IPC/WG/15/4). The International Bureau would afterwards prepare the corresponding amendments to the scheme.

22. Compte tenu du caractère permanent de la tâche relative à la suppression des renvois indicatifs du schéma de la CIB (voir le paragraphe 21 du document IPC/CE/37/9 et, en particulier, la tâche n° 3 indiquée à l'annexe IV dudit document), le groupe de travail a rappelé la décision qu'il avait prise à sa onzième session, selon laquelle, dans un deuxième temps, les rapporteurs pour les projets relatifs aux définitions qui seraient en cours à la fin de l'année 2007 devraient inclure dans leurs propositions les renvois indicatifs qui devraient être supprimés du schéma (voir le paragraphe 29 du document IPC/WG/15/4). Le Bureau international établira ensuite les modifications correspondantes à apporter au schéma.

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project **INPI - Brazilian Patent Office** Rapporteur Proposal (ANNEX 4)	Project: **D170** Subclass: **G08G** Date : 13/06/2008

BR proposes as informative references

G01C 21/00 navigational instruments
G09B 29/00 maps, route diagram
B60R 31/00 automatically controlling vehicle speed

? ..fi epodoc

? G08G/ic/low

? ..stat set 100000 /ic

? ..li m3

```
Memory is of type MEMSORT
 .  #  FREQ TERM
    1  1252 G01C21/00
    4   781 G09B29/00
    6   584 G09B29/10
    9   455 B60R21/00
   13   277 G01C21/26
   14   265 G06F17/60
   15   250 B60K31/00
   16   247 G01C21/34
   17   223 B60R1/00
   19   197 H04B7/26
   23   170 H04N7/18
   25   166 G06T1/00
   28   142 G07B15/00
   29   140 H04Q7/34
   30   134 B60T7/12
```

ANNEX 05

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/19/2
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/19/2

Project D 170 (electrical) – The Working Group invited further comments on the rapporteur proposal of Annex 1.

Projet D 170 (électricité) – Le groupe de travail a demandé d'autres observations sur la proposition du rapporteur figurant à l'annexe 1.

JAPAN PATENT OFFICE

July 7, 2008

Project: D170 Subclass: G08G

JP comment

JP thanks EP Rapporteur for this project D170.
JP supports BR proposal to add Informative references.
In addition, JP proposes to add two more Informative references as follows:

Informative references

B60K 31/00 Vehicle fittings for automatically controlling vehicle speed

B60R 21/00 Arrangements or fittings on vehicles for protecting or preventing injuries to occupants or pedestrians in case of accidents or other traffic risks

G01C 21/00 Navigation(determining the position and course of land vehicles, ships, aircrafts, and space vehicles)

G09B 29/00 Maps, route diagram

H04W 4/02 Services making use of the location of users or terminals specially adapted for wireless communication networks
（Note: H04Q7/ and H04B7/ is going to be revised to H04W which is scheduled to come into force in January 2009.）

United States Patent and Trademark Office

Project: D170	Subclass – G08G	Date 11 September 2008

Comments

In addition to the comments we submitted on 31 January 2008, US notes that G08G has been mentioned in project C449. It is suggested that the Rapporteur of this project take into consideration any outcome achieved in C449 that relates to G08G

ANNEX 08

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2

Project D 170 (electrical) – The Working Group invited a new rapporteur report and a proposal for the removal of non-limiting references.

Projet D 170 (électricité) – le groupe de travail a demandé un nouveau rapport du rapporteur et une proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs.

IPC/D 171
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **WG** **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **G01Q** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :**
RAPPORTEUR : **JP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **E** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	AP	27.12.2007
2	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	JP	01.02.2008
3	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
4	Comments	Observations	CA	31.03.2008
5	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	JP	15.05.2008
6	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	JP	15.05.2008
7	Comments	Observations	CA	22.05.2008
8	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	26.06.2008
9	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	JP	30.07.2008
10	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	JP	30.07.2008
11	English Version by Editorial Board	Version anglaise par comité de rédaction	IB	28.11.2008
12	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	30.12.2008
13	French version	Version française	FR	30.04.2009

IPC-AL – Définition	Project: D171/C448/A007/T007
	Class/subclass: G01Q, G01N, G12B
Version française	Date : 29 avril 2009

Titre – G01Q

Techniques ou appareils à sonde de balayage;

Applications des techniques de sonde à balayage, p.ex. microscopie à sonde à balayage [SPM]]

Enoncé de la définition

La présente sous-classe couvre:

Les sondes à balayage, p.ex. les dispositifs ayant au moins une pointe de dimensions nanométriques qui balaie ou se déplace à proximité d'une surface d'un objet, généralement à une distance de quelques angströms ou nanomètres, en contrôlant certaines interactions entre la pointe et la surface, p.ex. en contrôlant la génération d'un courant par effet tunnel.

Les techniques ou les appareils impliquant l'utilisation de sondes à balayage.

Les sujets suivants sont par conséquent couverts par la présente sous-classe, la liste n'étant pas exhaustive:

- les sondes à balayage en soi, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, p.ex. supports;
- la microscopie à sonde à balayage (SPM) ou microscopes, c. à d. l'application de sondes à balayage pour la recherche ou l'analyse d'une structure de surface à l'échelle atomique;
- les applications, autres que les applications SPM, impliquant l'utilisation de sondes à balayage.

Règles particulières de classement dans la présente sous-classe

Dans cette sous-classe, la règle de la première place est appliquée, c. à d. à chaque niveau hiérarchique, le classement s'effectue à la première place appropriée. .

Titre – G01Q 10/00

Dispositions pour le balayage ou le positionnement, c. à d. dispositions pour commander de manière active le mouvement ou la position de la sonde

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

La commande de manière active du mouvement ou de la position de la pointe de la sonde à balayage relativement à la surface de l'objet.

Titre – G01Q 10/02

Balayage ou positionnement grossier

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

La génération du mouvement de la pointe de la sonde à balayage relativement à la surface de l'objet à une échelle supérieure à la résolution du microscope à sonde à balayage.

Titre – G01Q 10/04

Balayage ou positionnement fin

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

La génération du mouvement de la pointe de la sonde à balayage relativement à la surface de l'objet à une échelle comparable à la résolution du microscope à sonde à balayage.

Titre – G01Q 10/06

Circuits ou algorithmes à cet effet

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les moyens électroniques pour localiser ou stabiliser le mouvement la pointe de la sonde à balayage relativement à la surface de l'objet.

Titre – G01Q 20/00

Contrôle du mouvement ou de la position de la sonde

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les appareils pour contrôler le mouvement de la sonde.

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

Contrôle du mouvement ou de la position de la sonde avec commande active de ceux-ci	G01Q 10/00

Titre – G01Q 20/02

par des moyens optiques

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Le contrôle du mouvement de la sonde par des dispositifs sensibles à la lumière.

Titre – G01Q 20/04

Sondes auto-détectrices, c. à d. dans lesquelles la sonde génère elle-même un signal représentatif de sa position, p.ex. jauge piézoélectrique

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les sondes comportant dans leurs structures, des moyens de détection d'un signal pour commander/contrôler leurs mouvements, p.ex. jauges piézoélectriques.

Titre – G01Q 30/00

Moyens auxiliaires destinés à assister ou améliorer les techniques ou les appareils à sonde à balayage, p.ex. dispositifs d'affichage ou de traitement de données

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les dispositifs ou les procédés pour assister ou améliorer l'analyse ou la recherche.

Titre – G01Q 30/02

Dispositifs d'analyse d'un type autre que la microscopie à sonde à balayage SPM, p.ex. microscope électronique à balayage SEM [Scanning Electron Microscope], spectromètre ou microscope optique

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Un dispositif d'analyse ou de recherche, différent d'un microscope à sonde à balayage, pour assister ou améliorer les techniques ou les appareils à sonde à balayage maîtres.

Titre – G01Q 30/04

Dispositifs d'affichage ou de traitement de données

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Un dispositif programmable qui stocke, récupère, traite ou affiche des données pour assister ou améliorer les techniques ou les appareils à sonde à balayage.

Titre – G01Q 30/06

pour compensation d'erreurs

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Un dispositif programmable dans lequel les informations de données sont utilisées pour corriger ou fixer les performances des SPM.

Titre – G01Q 30/08

Moyens pour établir ou réguler des conditions ambiantes souhaitées au sein d'une enceinte d'échantillonnage

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les moyens pour ajuster ou commander des paramètres, p.ex. la température, la pression ou l'humidité, des conditions de travail ambiantes au sein de l'enceinte contenant l'échantillon à étudier.

Titre – G01Q 30/10

Environnement thermique

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les moyens pour ajuster ou commander la température de l'enceinte d'échantillonnage, p.ex. un cryostat ou réchauffeur qui permet de faire fonctionner la sonde SPM à des températures basses ou élevées.

Titre – G01Q 30/12

Environnement avec fluide

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les moyens pour ajuster ou commander des paramètres, p.ex. la pression ou des compositions, de l'environnement fluide au sein de l'enceinte d'échantillonnage. L'environnement fluide peut être à l'état liquide ou gazeux.

Titre – G01Q 30/14

Environnement liquide

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les moyens pour ajuster ou commander des paramètres de l'environnement liquide, p.ex. l'eau ou un autre liquide chimique, au sein de l'enceinte d'échantillonnage.

Titre – G01Q 30/16

Environnement sous vide

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les moyens pour ajuster ou commander des conditions de vide au sein de l'enceinte d'échantillonnage, p.ex. moyens de pompage.

Titre – G01Q 30/18

Moyens pour protéger ou isoler l'intérieur d'une enceinte d'échantillonnage contre les conditions ou les facteurs environnementaux externes, p.ex. les vibrations ou les champs électromagnétiques

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les moyens pour empêcher les perturbations du SPM par des conditions extérieures au microscope à sonde à balayage, p.ex. vibration, température ou pression.

Le SPM est entièrement protégé contre les conditions défavorables. Par exemple, un boîtier ou agencement particulier pour éliminer les vibrations externes et assurer la stabilité du microscope, ou un blindage qui le protège des champs électromagnétiques.

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

Moyens de régulation des conditions ambiantes pour l'enceinte d'échantillonnage	G01Q 30/08
Moyens de régulation/compensation d'erreurs intégrés dans la sonde	G01Q 70/04

Titre – G01Q 30/20

Dispositifs ou procédés de manipulation d'échantillons

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs pour effectuer des opérations mécaniques sur un échantillon dans le microscope à sonde à balayage à des fins d'analyse ou de recherche, p.ex. pince brucelles, organes de coupe.

Titre – G01Q 40/00

Etalonnage, p.ex. des sondes

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs pour ajuster ou rectifier un dispositif SPM, p.ex. la sonde elle-même, selon des normes souhaitées.

Titre – G01Q 40/02

Leurs normes d'étalonnage ou procédés de fabrication

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les structures à résolution nanométrique pour corriger ou fixer les performances du dispositif SPM avant son utilisation, p.ex. grille avec une séparation linéaire connue, et leur fabrications correspondantes.

Titre – G01Q 60/00

Types particuliers de microscopie à sonde à balayage SPM [Scanning-Probe Microscopy] ou appareils à cet effet; Composants essentiels de ceux-ci

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs pour lesquels le type d'interaction entre la pointe de la sonde à balayage et la surface de l'échantillon est spécifié.

Titre – G01Q 60/02

Microscopie à sonde à balayage de type multiple, c.-à-d. incluant deux ou plus de deux techniques SPM

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs incluant deux ou plus de deux types différents d'interactions entre la pointe de la sonde à balayage et la surface de l'échantillon, p.ex.

SPM du type à levier autres que les AFM qui sont explicitement fabriqués pour des performances AFM.

Le dispositif peut contenir une ou plusieurs sondes pour effectuer différents types de SPM sur l'échantillon.

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

Dispositifs contenant des réseaux de pointes avec des performances similaires	G01Q 70/06

Titre – G01Q 60/04

Microscopie à effet tunnel à balayage STM [Scanning Tunnelling Microscopy] combinée avec la microscopie à forces atomiques AFM [Atomic Force Microscopy]

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs dans lesquels les deux interactions contrôlées sont le courant par effet tunnel (STM) et la force attractive ou répulsive entre la sonde et la surface de l'échantillon (AFM).

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

STM spécifiques	G01Q 60/10
AFM spécifiques	G01Q 60/24

Titre – G01Q 60/06

Microscopie optique à champ proche à balayage SNOM [Scanning Near-Field Optical Microscopy] combinée avec la microscopie à forces atomiques AFM [Atomic Force Microscopy]

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs dans lesquels les deux interactions contrôlées sont la lumière à champ proche émise depuis la surface de l'échantillon (SNOM) et la force attractive ou répulsive entre la sonde et la surface de l'échantillon (AFM).

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

SNOM spécifiques	G01Q 60/18
AFM spécifiques	G01Q 60/24

Titre – G01Q 60/08

Microscopie à forces magnétiques MFM [Magnetic Force Microscopy] combinée avec la microscopie à forces atomiques AFM [Atomic Force Microscopy]

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs dans lesquels les deux interactions contrôlées sont la force magnétique entre l'échantillon et la sonde (MFM) et la force attractive ou répulsive entre la sonde et la surface de l'échantillon (AFM).

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

MFM spécifiques	G01Q 60/50
AFM spécifiques	G01Q 60/24

Titre – G01Q 60/10

Microscopie à effet tunnel à balayage STM [Scanning Tunnelling Microscopy] ou appareils à cet effet, p.ex. sondes STM

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs pour les SPM dans lesquels l'interaction contrôlée est le courant par effet tunnel entre la pointe et l'échantillon, qui sont à proximité immédiate mais non réellement en contact physique.

Titre – G01Q 60/12

Spectroscopie à effet tunnel à balayage STS [Scanning Tunnelling Spectroscopy]

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les STM ou les appareils correspondants dans lesquels l'état électronique local de la surface est analysé ou recherché.

Titre – G01Q 60/14

Potentiométrie à effet tunnel à balayage STP [Scanning Tunnelling Potentiometry]

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les STM ou les appareils correspondants dans lesquels la distribution du potentiel électrique sur l'échantillon est analysée ou recherchée.

Titre – G01Q 60/16

Sondes, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, p.ex. supports

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les sondes STM, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, p.ex. supports.

Titre – G01Q 60/18

Microscopie optique à champ proche à balayage SNOM [Scanning Near-Field Optical Microscopy] ou appareils à cet effet, p.ex. sondes SNOM

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs pour les SPM dans lesquels l'interaction contrôlée est la lumière à champ proche émise ou réfléchie depuis la surface de l'objet.

Titre – G01Q 60/20

Fluorescence

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les SNOM ou les appareils correspondants dans lesquels la lumière à champ proche à contrôler est le rayonnement émis depuis une surface de l'échantillon excitée par une onde électromagnétique.

Titre – G01Q 60/22

Sondes, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, p.ex. supports

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les sondes SNOM, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, p.ex. supports

Titre – G01Q 60/24

Microscopie à forces atomiques AFM [Atomic Force Microscopy] ou appareils à cet effet, p.ex. sondes AFM

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs pour les SPM dans lesquels l'interaction contrôlée est la force répulsive à faible portée ou la force attractive à longue portée entre la sonde et les atomes de la surface de l'échantillon.

Titre – G01Q 60/26

Microscopie à forces de frottement

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les AFM ou les appareils correspondants dans lesquels la force contrôlée est la force de cisaillement entre la sonde et les atomes de la surface de l'échantillon.

Titre – G01Q 60/28

Microscopie à forces d'adhérence

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les AFM ou les appareils correspondants dans lesquels la force contrôlée est la force d'adhésion qui tend à maintenir la sonde en contact avec la surface de l'échantillon.

Titre – G01Q 60/30

Microscopie à mesure de potentiel à balayage

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les AFM ou les appareils correspondants dans lesquels la force contrôlée est une interaction électrique affectée par la distribution du potentiel électrique sur la surface de l'échantillon, p.ex. microscopie à sonde Kelvin et microscopie à balayage à contrainte de Maxwell.

Titre – G01Q 60/32

Mode vibrant

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les AFM ou les appareils correspondants dans lesquels la sonde est un levier vibrant, ou est fixée sur un levier vibrant.

Titre – G01Q 60/34

Mode à contact périodique

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les AFM ou les appareils correspondants dans lesquels la pointe de la sonde entre en contact périodiquement avec la surface de l'échantillon.

Titre – G01Q 60/36

Mode statique

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les AFM ou les appareils correspondants dans lesquels la sonde est, ou est fixée sur, un levier statique (c.à.d. sans vibration).

Titre – G01Q 60/38

Sondes, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, p.ex. supports

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les sondes AFM, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, p.ex. supports.

Titre – G01Q 60/40

Sondes conductrices

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les sondes AFM constituées d'un matériau qui conduit les charges électriques.

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

Sondes conductrices ayant le fonctionnement des sondes STM	G01Q 60/04, G01Q 60/16

Titre – G01Q 60/42

Fonctionnalisation

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les AFM ou les appareils correspondants dans lesquels des particules spécifiques sont ajoutées à la pointe pour lui donner une autre caractéristique, p.ex. récepteur chimique particulier pour analyse biochimique.

Titre – G01Q 60/44

Microscopie à conductance ionique à balayage SICM [Scanning Ion-Conductance Microscopy] ou appareils à cet effet, p.ex. sondes SICM

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs pour les SPM dans lesquels l'interaction contrôlée est le flux d'ions entre la pointe de la sonde et la surface de l'échantillon.

Titre – G01Q 60/46

Microscopie capacitive à balayage SCM [Scanning Capacitance Microscopy] ou appareils à cet effet, p.ex. sondes SCM

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs pour les SPM dans lesquels l'interaction contrôlée est la capacité électrique entre la pointe de la sonde et la surface de l'échantillon.

Titre – G01Q 60/48

Sondes, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, p.ex. supports

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les sondes SCM, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, p.ex. supports.

Titre – G01Q 60/50

Microscopie à forces magnétiques MFM [Magnetic Force Microscopy] ou appareils à cet effet, p.ex. sondes MFM

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs pour les SPM dans lesquels l'interaction contrôlée est la force magnétique entre la pointe de la sonde et la surface de l'échantillon.

Titre – G01Q 60/52

Résonance

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les sondes MFM ou les appareils correspondants, dans lesquelles un moment magnétique de spin est induit par une fréquence spécifique du champ magnétique.

Titre – G01Q 60/54

Sondes, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, p.ex. supports

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les sondes MFM, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, p.ex. supports.

Titre – G01Q 60/56

Sondes à revêtement magnétique

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les pointes de sondes MFM qui sont recouvertes d'un matériau ayant de propriétés magnétiques spécifiques.

Titre – G01Q 60/58

Microscopie thermique à balayage SThM [Scanning Thermal Microscopy] ou appareils à cet effet, p.ex. sondes SThM

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs pour les SPM dans lesquels l'interaction contrôlée est la chaleur ou la température de la surface de l'échantillon.

Titre – G01Q 60/60

Microscopie électrochimique à balayage SECM [Scanning Electro-Chemical Microscopy] ou appareils à cet effet, p.ex. sondes SECM

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les procédés ou les dispositifs pour les SPM dans lesquels l'interaction contrôlée est le courant de Faraday engendré par une réaction électrochimique.

Titre – G01Q 70/00

Aspects généraux des sondes SPM, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, dans la mesure où ces sondes ne sont pas spécialement adaptées à une seule technique SPM couverte par le groupe G01Q 60/00

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les aspects généraux des sondes SPM, leur fabrication ou leur instrumentation correspondante, dans la mesure où ces sondes ne sont pas spécialement adaptées à une seule technique SPM couverte par le groupe G01Q 60/00 et ses sous-groupes.

Titre – G01Q 70/02

Supports de sondes

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les aspects généraux des supports de sondes SPM.

Titre – G01Q 70/04

à compensation des erreurs induites par la température ou les vibrations

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les supports de sondes SPM d'usage général avec des moyens intégrés pour ajuster la sonde afin de corriger les erreurs dues aux variations de température ou aux vibrations.

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

Compensation d'erreurs en général	G01Q 30/06
Protection du microscope à sonde à balayage en général	G01Q 30/18

Titre – G01Q 70/06

Réseaux de pointes de sondes

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les sondes SPM d'usage général dans lesquelles des pointes multiples de caractéristiques similaires forment une ligne ou une matrice.

Titre – G01Q 70/08

Caractéristiques des sondes

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les caractéristiques spécifiques des sondes SPM d'usage général.

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

Procédés de fabrication des sondes	G01Q 70/16

Titre – G01Q 70/10

Forme ou cônicité

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

La forme physique spécifique, le degré de pente ou d'angle de la pointe d'une sonde SPM d'usage général.

Titre – G01Q 70/12

Pointes de nanotubes

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les sondes SPM d'usage général présentant un tube nanométrique tel qu'un nanotube de carbone.

Titre – G01Q 70/14

Matériaux particuliers

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les choix spécifiques de matériaux pour les sondes SPM d'usage général ou des composants à cet effet. Par exemple, un levier ou un revêtement sur la pointe est formé d'un matériau qui donne une propriété particulière à la sonde à balayage.

Titre – G01Q 70/16

Fabrication des sondes

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les aspects de la fabrication des sondes SPM d'usage général.

Titre – G01Q 70/18

Fonctionnalisation

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les sondes SPM d'usage général, dans lesquelles des particules spécifiques sont ajoutées à la pointe pour lui donner une autre caractéristique, p.ex. récepteur chimique spécifique pour analyse biochimique.

Titre – G01Q 80/00

Applications des techniques de sonde à balayage, autres que les techniques SPM

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les applications spécifiques, différentes des SPM, des techniques de sonde à balayage.

Renvois influençant le classement dans le présent sous-groupe

Le présent groupe ne couvre pas :

Fabrication ou traitement des micro-structures	B81C
Fabrication ou traitement des nano-structures	B82B 3/00
Enregistrement ou reproduction d'informations utilisant des interactions en champ proche	G11B 9/12, G11B 11/24, G11B 13/08

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche:

Techniques spécifiques des appareils SPM, appareils ou composants à cet effet, p.ex. sondes	G01Q 60/00
Aspects généraux des sondes SPM	G01Q 70/00

Titre – G01Q 90/00

Techniques ou appareils à sonde à balayage non prévus ailleurs

Enoncé de la définition

Le présent groupe couvre:

Les techniques ou les appareils à sonde à balayage non prévus ailleurs

IPC/D 172
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **WG** **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **G01D** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **E** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	10.03.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	26.03.2008
4	Comments	Observations	US	04.06.2008
5	Comments	Observations	JP	06.06.2008
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	06.11.2008
7	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	06.11.2008
8	Comments	Observations	CA	14.11.2008
9	Comments	Observations	GB	18.11.2008
10	Comments	Observations	US	19.11.2008
11	Comments	Observations	JP	20.11.2008
12	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	08.01.2009
13	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	13.01.2009
14	Comments	Observations	US	11.03.2009
15	Comments	Observations	CA	25.03.2009

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: **D172**
	Subclass: **G01D**
EPO Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 06-11-2008

Title - G01D

Measuring not specially adapted for a specific variable; Arrangements for measuring two or more variables not covered by a single other subclass; Tariff metering apparatus; Measuring or testing not otherwise provided

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Measuring not specially adapted for a specific variable

Apparatus or arrangements for measuring not specially adapted for a specific variable covered by a single other subclass.
Measuring arrangements or apparatus giving results other than momentary value of a variable, and not specially adapted for a variable covered by a single other subclass, e.g.

- giving mean values, root mean square [RMS] or integral values
- signalling that a predetermined value has been exceeded.

Measuring arrangements with provision for special purposes, e.g.

- for altering or correcting the transfer function
- for mitigating undesired influences, like temperature or pressure

Component parts of said measuring apparatus or arrangements.
Testing or calibrating of said measuring apparatus or arrangements.

Transferring or transducing arrangements not specially adapted for a specific variable

Means for transferring the output of a sensing member.
Measurement transducers not specially adapted for a specific variable and not provided for elsewhere, i.e. means for converting the output of a sensing member to another variable where the form or nature of the sensing member does not constrain the means for converting, e.g. encoders.

Indicating or recording measured values not specially adapted for a specific variable

Apparatus or arrangements for indicating or recording the results of measurements, not specially adapted for variables covered by a single other subclass, e.g. general recording by stylus and paper roll.
Component parts of said indicating or recording apparatus or arrangements.
Testing or calibrating of said indicating or recording apparatus or arrangements.

Tariff meters

Apparatus or arrangements for tariff metering in general.
Component parts of tariff metering apparatus or arrangements.
Testing or calibrating of tariff metering apparatus or arrangements.

Measuring or testing not otherwise provided for

Measuring or testing not otherwise provided for.
Apparatus or arrangements for measuring two or more variables not covered by a single other subclass.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

G01D covers measuring arrangements, or arrangements for indicating, recording or transducing measurements not specially adapted for a specific variable covered by a single other subclass. Therefore when the variable is specified and covered by a single other subclass of G01, classification should be directed to the relevant subclass.

For example, classification should be directed to G01D for measuring arrangements giving the RMS value of a unspecified variable, or signalling that a predetermined value of a unspecified variable has been exceeded. Instead, when the variable in consideration is specified (e.g. a voltage, liquid level or temperature), and a single other subclass exists that covers measurements of that variable (e.g. G01R, G01F or G01K respectively) then classification should be directed to the relevant subclass.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Tariff meters

Tariff meters for measuring the time integral of electric power or current, e.g. electric consumption	G01R 11/56
Tariff metering apparatus in taxi's, i.e. taximeters	G07B 13/00
Apparatus actuated by coins, cards or the like with meter-controlled dispensing of liquid, gas, or electricity	G07F 15/00

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Measuring not specially adapted for a specific variable

Bearings	F16C
Stands or supports in general	F16M
Arrangements for signalling that a level of liquid has been exceeded	G01F 23/00
Arrangements for signalling that a value of temperature has been exceeded	G01K 3/00
Measuring root mean square [RMS] values of currents or voltages	G01R 19/02

Transferring or transducing arrangements not specially adapted for a specific variable

Instruments for converting a single current or a single voltage into a mechanical displacement	G01R 5/00
Transmission systems for measured values	G08C
Coding, decoding or code conversion, in general	H03M
Wireless communication networks	H04W

Indicating or recording measured values not specially adapted for a specific variable

Arrangements of instruments specially adapted for vehicles; Dashboards	B60K 35/00, B60K 37/00
Registering or indicating the working of vehicles	G07C 5/08
Displaying in general	G09F
Recording with possibility of play-back	G11B
Indicating elements of instruments not otherwise provided for	G12B 11/00

Measuring or testing not otherwise provided for

Testing structures or apparatus not otherwise provided for	G01M

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

The Canadian Intellectual Property Office CIPO OPIC L'Office de la propriété intellectuelle du Canada

Project Number	**: D172**
Class/Subclass	**: G01D**
Date	**: November 13, 2008**

CA thanks the Rapporteur for the substantial work done on the definition of Subclass G01D, as found in the Rapporteur proposal of Annex 7. CA finds the proposed definition very clear.

CA would like to make three suggestions:

- In the part *Relationship between large subject matter areas*, CA would suggest replacing the expression "variable in consideration" by "variable under consideration", and the expression "directed to the relevant subclass" by "directed to that subclass". CA emphasises that this is purely stylistic, and that the Rapporteur's expressions are clear.

- In the part *Informative references* (under *Indicating or recording measured values not specially adapted for a specific variable*), CA would suggest that the title corresponding to G11B — "Recording with possibility of play-back" — be replaced by the current reference of the title of Subclass G01D: "Recording in a way which requires playback through a transducer".

- Also in the part *Informative references* (under *Indicating or recording measured values not specially adapted for a specific variable*), it might be worth adding entries for subgroups A61B 5/0432 ("Recording apparatus specially adapted for electrocardiography") and A61B 5/044 ("Displays specially adapted for electrocardiography"). Alternatively, a sentence could be added under *Relationship between large subject matter areas* to emphasise that specially adapted recording or displaying apparatus are covered by the appropriate subclass, A61B being one example.

CA is also wondering whether the Definition should attempt to distinguish between computer-linked data recording systems and non-computer-linked systems. More specifically, should general computerized data-acquisition systems be classified solely in G06F 17/40, in which case an entry in *References relevant to classification in this subclass* would appear necessary?

Claude Plante
Senior Patent Classification Examiner

UK Intellectual Property Office	**GB Comments**
Definition Project D172, subclass G01D	Date: 18 November 2008

The UK suggests the following minor editorial changes:

Title:
‘Measuring or testing not otherwise provided’ - change to ‘provided for’

Definition statement:
‘Testing or calibrating of said measuring apparatus’ - remove ‘of’
(Or, change to ‘test and calibration of…’)

Bill Riggs

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
IPC Revision Working Group	
Topic: D172 – G01D	**Date: 19 November 2008**

US thanks the R for the RR and RP of annexes 6 and 7, and appreciates the comments made by CA and GB. We can agree with CA suggested changes in annex 8, under their three bullets, i.e. Relationship between large subject matter areas and Informative references. We can also agree with GB suggestions of annex 9. US suggests that G06M 1/28 should be added as an informative reference with regards to tariff metering apparatus.

[end]

Japan Patent Office November 20, 2008

Project: D172 Subclass: G01D

JP Comments

JP thanks for the EP Rapporteur's report of annex 6 and proposal of annex 7 for this project.

1. In the listing of "References relevant to classification in this subclass" section;

JP suggests to add the reference to B64D in "Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:" section as below.

Indicating or recording measured values not specially adapted for a specific variable

Indicators for aircraft	**B64D**

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D172**	Subject:	IPC Subclass: **G01D**
Rapporteur Proposal		08 January 2009

Tasks: 1. Removal of Informative/Application-Type References from the Scheme References according to Version 2009.01;
2. Maintenance-type proposal

1. Removal of Informative/Application-Type References from the Scheme

Place	Reference to	Category	Proposed action	Comments
G01D	G01R	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
G01D	G09F	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions	
G01D	G11B	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions	
1/00	G06	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
1/02	G01R 19/02	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	
1/18	G01F	Informative (D)	Change into G01F 23/00, remove from the scheme, and add to group definitions	
1/18	G01K	Informative (D)	Change into G01K 3/00, remove from the scheme, and add to group definitions	
4/00	G01R 11/56	Application-type (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	
4/00	G07B 13/00	Application-type (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	
4/00	G07F	Application-type (D)	Change into G07F 15/00, remove from the scheme, and add to group definitions	
4/04	G06M 1/28	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
4/08	G06M	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
5/00	G01	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
5/00	H01	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
5/00	G01R 5/00	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	
5/00	G01R 15/04	Application-type	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	
5/00	G01R 15/14	Application-type	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	
5/00	G01R 19/25	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	
5/00	G08C	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	
5/00	G08C 19/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	
5/04	F16	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
5/06	F16	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
11/02	F16C	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	
11/30	F16M	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	
15/16	B43K	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
15/26	G04B	Informative	Remove from the scheme	
15/26	G04C	Informative	Remove from the scheme	

2. Add a part to G01D subclass title

During the analysis for the Definition, **R** realized that the subject-matter of **Transferring or transducing arrangements not specially adapted for a specific variable**, which is covered by group 5/00 (see also bullet 4 under Note (1) after subclass title) is not so clearly covered by the current subclass title.

Therefore **R** suggests a "maintenance"-type change for the subclass title:

CL	M	**G01D**	**--- TARIFF METERING APPARATUS; TRANSFERRING OR TRANSDUCING ARRANGEMENTS NOT SPECIALLY ADAPTED FOR A SPECIFIC VARIABLE; MEASURING OR TESTING ---**

NB: likewise for the subclass index, which should point to main group 5/00

Roberto Iasevoli

ANNEX 13

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2

Project D 172 (electrical) – The Working Group invited a new rapporteur report and a proposal for the removal of non-limiting references.

Projet D 172 (électricité) – le groupe de travail a demandé un nouveau rapport du rapporteur et une proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs.

United State Patent and Trademark Office	
Project: D172	IPC Subclass: G01D
US Comments	March 11, 2009

US appreciates the Rapporteur's proposal of Annex 12. Please find below US comments on the removal of informative references from the scheme andmaintenance-type proposal.

1. Removal of Informative/Applicaion-Type References from the Scheme

Place	Reference to	Category	Proposed action	US Comments
G01D	G01R	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Agrees
G01D	G09F	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions	Agrees
G01D	G11B	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions	Agrees
1/00	G06	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Agrees
1/02	G01R 19/02	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	Disagree/ Limiting
1/18	G01F	Informative (D)	Change into G01F 23/00, remove from the scheme, and add to group definitions	Agrees with 23/00, Disagree/ Limiting
1/18	G01K	Informative (D)	Change into G01K 3/00, remove from the scheme, and add to group definitions	Agrees with 3/00, Disagree/ Limiting
4/00	G01R 11/56	Application-type (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	Disagree/ Limiting
4/00	G07B 13/00	Application-type (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	Agrees
4/00	G07F	Application-type (D)	Change into G07F 15/00, remove from the scheme, and add to group definitions	Agrees with 15/00, Disagree/ Limiting
4/04	G06M 1/28	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Agrees
4/08	G06M	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Agrees
5/00	G01	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Agrees
5/00	H01	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Agrees
5/00	G01R 5/00	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	Agrees
5/00	G01R 15/04	Application-type	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	Agrees
5/00	G01R 15/14	Application-type	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	Agrees
5/00	G01R 19/25	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	Agrees
5/00	G08C	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	Agrees
5/00	G08C 19/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	Agrees
5/04	F16	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Agrees
5/06	F16	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Agrees
11/02	F16C	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	Agrees
11/30	F16M	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme and add to group definitions	Agrees
15/16	B43K	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Agrees

Place	Reference to	Category	Proposed action	US Comments
15/26	G04B	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Agrees
15/26	G04C	Informative	Remove from the scheme	Agrees

2. Add a part to G01D subclass title

US understands that this modification would be to clarify the title and would not involve reclassification of documents since the scope of the place has not changed. US can agree to the proposed change of G01D title/Annex 12 providing that no reclassification is involved.

[end]

The Canadian Intellectual Property Office CIPO OPIC L'Office de la propriété intellectuelle du Canada

Project Number	**: D172**
Class/Subclass	**: G01D**
Date	**: March 25, 2009**

.

Upon review of Annexes 12 and 14, CA agrees with most of the Rapporteur proposal, with the following exceptions (similar to US):

- In relation with Subgroup G01D 1/02, G01R 19/02 should be a limiting reference.

- In relation with Subgroup G01D 1/18, the expression "for a specified parameter, see the subclass relevant to this parameter" should be considered limiting and kept in the scheme. However, CA does not object to the two examples — level and temperature, corresponding to G01F 23/00 and G01K 3/00 — being moved to the group definitions, if the Rapporteur considers this would make the classification scheme more readable. Alternatively, if it is felt that a reference should always point to a definite place, the current reference could be replaced by a note with a similar content.

- In relation with G01D 4/00 ("Tariff metering apparatus"), CA thinks that all three references (G01R 11/56, G07B 13/00 and G07F 15/00) should be considered limiting, since they are application-oriented tariff meters. While the definition makes this point clear, removing the reference from the scheme may lead to some ambiguity, and to some applications being classified both in Subclass G01D and in the application-oriented place.

Claude Plante
Senior Patent Classification Examiner

IPC/D 173
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G01F**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	10.03.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	28.03.2008
4	Comments	Observations	JP	08.04.2008
5	Comments	Observations	US	04.06.2008
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	30.09.2008
7	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	30.09.2008
8	Comments	Observations	GB	18.11.2008
9	English Version by Editorial Board	Version anglaise par comité de rédaction	IB	28.11.2008
10	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	13.01.2009
11	French version	Version française	EP	16.02.2009
12	Comments	Observations	CA	07.04.2009
13	Comments	Observations	FR	20.05.2009

ANNEX 10

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2

Project D 173 (electrical) – The Working Group approved the English version of Annex 7, subject to the amendments proposed in Annex 8. The Rapporteur was invited to submit a proposal for the removal of non-limiting references.

Projet D 173 (électricité) – le groupe de travail a approuvé la version anglaise de l'annexe 7, sous réserve des modifications proposées dans l'annexe 8. Le rapporteur a été invité à soumettre une proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs.

GT Révision CIB – Projet de définition	Projet : **D173**
	Sous-classe : **G01F**
Proposition du rapporteur OEB	Date : 30-09-2008

G01F

Mesure des volumes, des débits volumétriques, des débits massiques ou du niveau des liquides ; comptage volumétrique

Enoncé de la définition

La présente sous-classe couvre :

Appareils ou procédés de mesure du débit volumétrique ou du débit massique d'un fluide ou d'un matériau solide fluent *[alternative: s'écoulant]*.
Appareils ou procédés de comptage volumétrique.
Appareils ou procédés de mesure de la capacité des récipients ou des cavités, ou du volume des corps solides, des fluides ou des matériaux solides fluents.
Indicateurs de niveau.
Parties constitutives, accessoires, essai ou étalonnage des appareils décrits.

Liens entre secteurs d'une large portée

AUCUN.

Renvois influençant le classement dans la présente sous-classe

La présente sous-classe ne couvre pas :

Mesure des dimensions linéaires pour déterminer le volume	G01B

Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente sous-classe lorsque cette matière est spécialement adaptée à une application, utilisée à des fins particulières ou incorporée dans un système plus vaste :

Dispositifs de détection du débit de lait dans les machines ou dispositifs pour la traite	A01J 5/01
Récipients à aliments comportant un système de distribution distribuant une certaine quantité de produits alimentaires en poudre ou en grains	A47G 19/34
Appareils à préparer des boissons à commande du niveau de l'eau	A47J 31/56
Mesure du débit sanguin	A61B 5/026 A61B 8/06
Dosage des agents introduits dans le corps, p.ex. compteurs de goutte-à-goutte	A61M 5/168
Régler, par mesure volumétrique, la quantité de matériaux fluides-solides fournis dans un récipient lors de l'emballage	B65B 1/36

Régler, par mesure volumétrique, la quantité de matériaux plastiques, de semi-liquides, de liquides, ou de liquides et solides mélangés, fournis dans un récipient lors de l'emballage	B65B 3/30
Séparation de quantités dosées de l'approvisionnement, par mesure volumétrique	B65B 37/20
Mise en bouteilles de liquides ou de semi-liquides permettant la mesure des liquides à introduire, p.ex. quand on ajoute des sirops	B67C 3/20
Agencements de compteurs à liquide mesurant des volumes ou des débits volumétriques dans des appareils distribuant des liquides, p.ex. pour la vente au détail	B67D 5/16
Mesure du niveau du liquide dans des puits	E21B 47/04
Dispositifs indicateurs du niveau du lubrifiant	F01M 11/12
Mesure du débit d'admission d'air pour produire un signal de commande pour commander l'alimentation en mélange combustible dans les moteurs à combustion	F02D 41/18
Dispositifs de dosage dans des circuits de lubrification	F16N 27/00
Agencements pour mesurer la quantité de produit transféré dans des canalisations	F17D 3/18
Adaptation d'indicateurs de niveau à des chaudières à vapeur ou montage sur celles-ci	F22B 37/78
Commande de l'alimentation en eau ou du niveau d'eau pour la production de vapeur	F22D 5/00
Pluviomètres ou udomètres	G01W 1/14
Appareils actionnés par des pièces de monnaie, des cartes ou similaires avec distribution de liquide ou de gaz commandée par le comptage	G07F 15/00
Mesure ou surveillance du débit de réfrigérant dans les réacteurs nucléaires ; Dispositifs de détection du niveau de réfrigérant ou du modérateur dans les réacteurs nucléaires	G21C 17/032 G21C 17/035
Accumulateurs combinés avec des dispositifs de mesure, d'essai ou d'indication d'état, p.ex. du niveau ou de la densité de l'électrolyte	H01M 10/48

Endroits par rapport auxquels la présente sous-classe est résiduaire :

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche :

Filtres	B01D
Burettes ou pipettes	B01L 3/02
Peser au passage un produit dont l'écoulement est continu	G01G 11/00
Mesure de la pression	G01L
Mesure de la vitesse des fluides, p.ex. d'un courant atmosphérique	G01P 5/00
Détermination d'une distance ou d'une vitesse en utilisant des techniques sonar, radar ou lidar	G01S
Commande de débits ; commande du niveau	G05D 7/00

	G05D 9/00
Dispositifs d'alarme	G08B
Interrupteurs électriques actionnés par le changement de niveau du liquide, p.ex. interrupteurs à flotteurs, ou par un changement d'écoulement du fluide	H01H 35/18 H01H 35/24

Règles particulières de classement dans la présente sous-classe

AUCUNE.

Glossaire

Dans la présente sous-classe, les termes (ou expressions) suivants sont utilisé(e)s avec le sens ci-dessous indiqué :

Synonymes et mots-clés

Dans les documents de brevet, les abréviations suivantes sont souvent utilisées :

Dans les documents de brevet, les expressions (les mots) "---", "---" et "---" sont souvent utilisé(e)s comme synonymes.

Dans les documents de brevet, l'expression (le mot) "---" est souvent utilisé(e) à la place de "---" qui est employé dans le schéma de classification de la présente sous-classe.

Dans les documents de brevet, l'expression (le mot) "---" est souvent utilisé(e) au sens de "---".

The Canadian Intellectual Property Office CIPO OPIC L'Office de la propriété intellectuelle du Canada

Project Number	**: D173**
Class/Subclass	**: G01F**
Date	**: 07 avril 2009**

Après révision de l'Annexe 11, CA aimerait formuler les remarques suivantes :

- CA préfère l'expression « s'écoulant » au terme « fluent », dont l'orthographe semble équivoque (la forme « fluant » est également utilisée par *Termium Plus*®) et dont le sens semble différer quelque peu du sens du terme anglais « fluent ». Par exemple, le dictionnaire *Le petit Larousse — Grand format* (2003) le définit ainsi : « qui change sans cesse; mouvant, changeant. ».

- Il serait peut-être mieux de remplacer l'expression « Appareils à préparer des boissons à commande du niveau de l'eau », correspondant au symbole A47J 31/56, par l'expression « Bouilloires à commande du niveau de l'eau ». L'expression utilisée dans l'Annexe 11 traduit correctement l'expression de l'Annexe 9, mais il semblerait préférable de corriger l'imprécision de l'expression de l'Annexe 9 dans les versions française et anglaise.

- Une imprécision de même nature a été notée dans le cas de l'expression correspondant au symbole G07F 15/00 : « apparatus actuated by coins, cards or the like with meter-controlled dispensing of liquid and gas ». La traduction par l'expression « Appareils actionnés par des pièces de monnaie, des cartes ou similaires avec distribution de liquide ou de gaz commandée par le comptage » rend fidèlement le texte anglais, mais ne correspond pas au titre du groupe principal (en français : *Appareils déclenchés par pièce de monnaie avec distribution de liquide ou de gaz [ou d'électricité] commandée par le comptage*; en anglais : *Coin-freed apparatus with meter-controlled dispensing of liquid or gas, [or electricity]*). Le titre du groupe principal semble nettement plus restrictif que l'énoncé utilisé dans la définition.

Claude Plante
Senior Patent Classification Examiner

INSTITUT NATIONAL DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INDUSTRIELLE FR – 20 mai 2009

Projet IPC / **D173**
Sous-classe **G01F**

OBSERVATIONS SUR LA VERSION FRANÇAISE

Réf. : *Annexes 11 et 12 du dossier de projet.*

Nous sommes d'accord avec la version française présentée par l'OEB.

Nous avons les remarques suivantes à formuler :

Renvois influençant le classement dans la présente sous-classe :

B65B1/36 Il faudrait remplacer l'expression 'Régler, par mesure volumétrique, la quantité de matériaux fluides-solides----' par **'Réglage**, par mesure volumétrique, **de** la quantité de matériaux fluides-solides ---'

B65B3/30 Il faudrait remplacer l'expression 'Régler, par mesure volumétrique, la quantité de matériaux plastiques---' par **'Réglage** par mesure volumétrique, **de** la quantité de matériaux plastiques—'

G01G11/00 Il faudrait remplacer l'expression 'Peser, au passage un produit---' par '**Pesage**, au passage **d'**un produit'

IPC/D 174
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G01G**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	10.03.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	11.04.2008
4	Comments	Observations	US	04.06.2008
5	Comments	Observations	JP	06.06.2008
6	Comments	Observations	JP	10.06.2008
7	Comments	Observations	DE	27.06.2008
8	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	25.09.2008
9	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	25.09.2008
10	Comments	Observations	CA	10.10.2008
11	Comments	Observations	EP	13.10.2008
12	Comments	Observations	US	16.10.2008
13	Comments	Observations	GB	18.11.2008
14	Comments	Observations	BR	22.11.2008
15	English version by Editorial Board	Version anglaise par comité de rédaction	IB	12.01.2009
16	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	13.01.2009

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
17	French version	Version française	EP	16.02.2009
18	Comments	Observations	CA	30.04.2009
19	Comments	Observations	FR	20.05.2009

ANNEX 16

EXCERPT FROM DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2
EXTRAIT DU DOCUMENT IPC/WG/20/2

Project D 174 (electrical) – The Working Group approved the English version of Annex 9, subject to the amendments proposed in Annex 13 and the second paragraph of Annex 10. The Rapporteur was invited to submit a proposal for the removal of non-limiting references.

Projet D 174 (électricité) – le groupe de travail a approuvé la version anglaise de l'annexe 9, sous réserve des modifications proposées dans l'annexe 13 et au deuxième paragraphe de l'annexe 10. Le rapporteur a été invité à présenter une proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs.

GT Révision CIB – Projet de définition	Projet : **D174**
	Sous-classe : **G01G**
Proposition du rapporteur OEB	Date : 24-09-2008

G01G

Pesée

Enoncé de la définition

La présente sous-classe couvre :

Appareils ou méthodes de pesée dans lesquels l'équilibrage est assuré par l'action d'un fluide, une action magnétique, électrostatique ou similaire, p.ex. :

- balances à fléau,
- balances à ressort.

Appareils de pesée pour bande transporteuse.

Appareils ou méthodes avec remplissage ou vidange automatiques pour peser des quantités données d'un produit ou pour contrôler le poids de produits déversés dans des récipients amovibles.

Appareils ou méthodes pour peser un produit ayant une forme ou des propriétés particulières.

Appareils ou méthodes de pesée adaptés à des fins particulières, p.ex.

- pesée de véhicules,
- pesée de charges suspendues,
- pesée avant de mélanger des produits,
- pesée par combinaison,
- calcul de quantités en fonction du poids,
- pesée de personnes,
- appareils de pesée combinés avec d'autres objets.

Parties constitutives ou accessoires des appareils de pesée décrits.

Liens entre secteurs d'une large portée

La mesure des forces est classée dans les groupes G01L 1/00 and G01L 5/00. La limite entre la sous-classe G01G et la sous-classe G01L doit être déterminée en analysant si les caractéristiques dictant le classement sont centrées sur le capteur de force ou sur le dispositif de pesée.

L'emballage d'objets est classé dans la sous-classe B65B, tandis que les appareils de transport d'objets sont classés dans la sous-classe B65G. La limite entre la sous-classe G01G et les sous-classes B65B, B65G doit être déterminée en analysant si les caractéristiques dictant le classement sont centrées sur l'emballage/le transport ou sur la pesée.

Renvois influençant le classement dans la présente sous-classe

La présente sous-classe ne couvre pas :

Déterminer le poids en mesurant les volumes	G01F

Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente classe lorsque cette matière est spécialement adaptée à une application, utilisée à des fins particulières ou incorporée dans un système plus vaste :

Dispositifs de pesée spécialement adaptés aux batteuses	A01F 12/50
Dispositifs de pesée combinés avec des appareils de diagnostic	A61B 5/107
Cannes combinées avec des appareils de pesée	A45B 3/08
Classement ou triage des matériaux solides par voie sèche selon le poids	B07B 13/08
Tri selon le poids	B07C 5/16
Pesée d'un produit coupé en combinaison avec la coupe	B26D 7/30
Aménagements, sur les véhicules, d' appareils de pesage	B60P 5/00
Régulation des freins selon le poids du véhicule	B60T 8/18
Régler, par pesage, la quantité de matériau fluide-solide fourni ou déversé dans un récipient lors de l'emballage	B65B 1/32
Pesée de contrôle des réceptacles ou récipients remplis	B65B 1/46
Régler, par pesage, la quantité de matériaux plastiques, de semi-liquides, de liquides, ou de liquides et solides mélangés, fournis ou chargés dans un récipient lors de l'emballage	B65B 3/28
Séparation de quantités dosées de l'approvisionnement, par pesage	B65B 37/18
Incorporation de dispositifs de pesée dans des grues	B66C 13/16
Mesure du débit massique d'un fluide ou d'un matériau solide fluent *[alternative: s'écoulant]*	G01F 1/76
Indication ou mesure de niveau par mesure du poids, p.ex. pour déterminer le niveau d'un gaz liquéfié stocké	G01F 23/20
Analyse des matériaux par pesage	G01N 5/00
Recherche de la densité ou du poids spécifique des matériaux ; analyse des matériaux en déterminant la densité ou le poids spécifique	G01N 9/00
Mesure de champs ou d'ondes de gravitation, ou prospection gravimétrique, utilisant des balances	G01V 7/08
Commande du rapport de plusieurs débits en déterminant le	G05D 11/04

poids des composants individuels	
Dispositifs de pesée combinés avec des appareils à affranchir	G07B 17/00
Vérification de pièces de monnaie par le poids	G07D 5/04
Appareils déclenchés par pièces de monnaie pour commander la distribution de fluides, de produits semi-liquides ou de produits granuleux contenus dans des réservoirs, au poids	G07F 13/04

Endroits par rapport auxquels la présente sous-classe est résiduaire :

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche :

Dispositifs de sécurité pour limiter ou indiquer une force de levage	B66F 17/00
Dispositifs indicateurs pour engins de terrassement	E02F 9/26
Paliers	F16C
Amortisseurs	F16F
Mesure des forces en général	G01L 1/00
Mesure des forces adaptée à des buts particuliers	G01L 5/00
Commande de débits	G05D 7/00
Equipement de traitement de données	G06F 19/00
Comptage	G06M
Caisses enregistreuses	G07G 1/00

Règles particulières de classement dans la présente sous-classe

AUCUNE.

Glossaire

Dans la présente sous-classe, les termes (ou expressions) suivants sont utilisé(e)s avec le sens ci-dessous indiqué :

Synonymes et mots-clés

*Dans les documents de brevet, les expressions (les mots) "**balance**", "**pèse-(nom d'objet)**" et "**dispositif de pesée**" sont souvent utilisé(e)s comme synonymes.*

The Canadian Intellectual Property Office CIPO OPIC L'Office de la propriété intellectuelle du Canada

Numéro de projet : D174
Classe/Sous-classe: G01G
Date : 30 avril 2009

CA aimerait apporter les suggestions suivantes en rapport avec la version française (Annexe 17).

- L'énoncé « Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente classe… » devrait être « Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente sous-classe… ». (Le texte anglais utilise le mot « class », mais il semblerait qu'il s'agisse d'une erreur typographique.)

- *Sous-groupe A01F 12/50* : Le schéma de classification utilise l'expression « pèse-sacs », plutôt que « dispositifs de pesée ». Il semblerait donc préférable de traduire : « Pèse-sacs spécialement adaptés aux batteuses ».

- *Sous-groupe G01F 1/76* : L'expression « s'écoulant » semblerait préférable au terme « fluent », dont l'orthographe semble variable, et dont le sens semble différer de l'équivalent anglais. Le dictionnaire *Le petit Larousse — Grand format (2003)* le définit ainsi : « qui change sans cesse; mouvant, changeant. ».

Claude Plante
Examinateur principal en classification de brevets

INSTITUT NATIONAL DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INDUSTRIELLE FR – 20 mai 2009

Projet IPC / **D174**
Sous-classe **G01G**

OBSERVATIONS SUR LA VERSION FRANÇAISE

Réf. : *Annexes 17 et 18 du dossier de projet.*

Nous sommes d'accord avec la version française présentée par l'OEB.

Nous avons les remarques suivantes à formuler :

Renvois influençant le classement dans la présente sous-classe :

G01F Il faudrait remplacer l'expression 'Déterminer le poids en mesurant les volumes---' par '**Détermination du** poids en mesurant les volumes**'**

B65B1/32 Il faudrait remplacer l'expression 'Régler, par pesage, la quantité de matériau fluide-solide----' par **'Réglage**, par pesage **de** la quantité de matériau fluide-solide ---'

B65B3/28 Il faudrait remplacer l'expression 'Régler, par pesage, la quantité de matériaux plastiques---' par **'Réglage**, par pesage, **de** la quantité de matériaux plastiques—'

IPC/D 175
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G01H**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	21.04.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	16.06.2008
4	Comments	Observations	US	30.06.2008
5	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	03.10.2008
6	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	03.10.2008
7	Comments	Observations	US	16.10.2008
8	Rapporteur proposal removal of non-limiting references	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	20.04.2009
9	French version	Version française	EP	27.04.2009
10	Comments	Observations	CA	22.05.2009
11	Comments	Observations	JP	25.05.2009
12	Comments	Observations	EP	25.05.2009

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D175**	Subject: **Measurement of mechanical vibrations ...**	IPC range: **G01H**
Rapporteur Report		3 October 2008

Ref.: Annexes 2-4 of project file

Comments were received on the initial proposal (annex 2) from CA and US.

CA, gave useful suggestions for improving the wording of several references. US supported CA suggestions.
Besides, both offices stressed that the Definition statement should be amended so as to make clear that G01H covers measurement, <u>or measurement in combination with generation</u>, of mechanical vibrations etc.
R accepts all of CA and US remarks.

Besides, **R** has reconsidered the position of the references to B06B and G06K, previously indicated as "limiting = this subclass does not cover".
Subclasses B06B and G06K cover solely generation of mechanical vibrations, and not measurement. Hence they seems to be informative under G01H.
On the other hand, it will be appropriate to indicate under B06B and G06K definitions, that G01H is limiting for them, as it covers generation in combination with measurement.

Roberto Iasevoli

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: **D175**
	Subclass: **G01H**
EPO Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 13/11/08

G01H

Measurement of mechanical vibrations or ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Apparatus or methods for the measurement, or measurement in combination with generation, of mechanical vibrations or the like, and particularly for the measurement of:

- mechanical vibrations or ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves by using radiation-sensitive means, e.g. optical means;
- mechanical vibrations or ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves by detecting changes in electric or magnetic properties;
- mechanical vibrations or ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves by other means;
- vibrations in solids by using direct conduction to the detector;
- vibrations in fluids by using a detector in a fluid;
- propagation velocity of ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves;
- reverberation time;
- resonant frequency;
- mechanical or acoustic impedance.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

NONE.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Determining unbalance by oscillating the body to be tested and converting vibrations due to unbalance into electric variables	G01M 1/22
Vibration testing of structures	G01M 7/02
Investigating or analysing materials by the use of ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves; Visualisation of the interior of objects	G01N 29/00

by transmitting ultrasonic or sonic waves through the object	
Systems using the reflection or reradiation of acoustic waves, e.g. sonar systems	G01S 15/00
Sonar systems designed for mapping or imaging	G01S 15/89
Seismology; Seismic or acoustic prospecting or detecting	G01V 1/00
Manufacture of electromechanical resonators by processes which include measurement of frequency with consequential modification of the resonator	H03H 3/007

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Generating or transmitting mechanical vibrations in solids without measurement	B06B
Measuring distance, levels or bearings; Navigation; Gyroscopic instruments; Photogrammetry or videogrammetry	G01C
Measuring pressure of a fluid or fluent solid material	G01L 7/00-19/00
Acousto-optical devices	G02F 1/11, G02F 1/33
Obtaining records by techniques analogous to photography using ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves	G03B 42/06
Musical instruments	G10B-G10H
Generating or transmitting mechanical vibrations in fluids without measurement	G10K
Arrangements for producing a reverberation or echo sound in fluids	G10K 15/89
Speech analysis or synthesis; Speech recognition	G10L
Piezo-electric, electro-strictive or magneto-strictive elements	H01L 41/00

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
IPC Revision Working Group	
Topic: D175 – G01H	**Date: 16 October 2008**

US thanks the Rapporteur for RR and RP of annexes 5 and 6, respectively. US can agree to the RP of annex 6.

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D175**	Subject: **Measurement of mechanical vibrations ...**	IPC Subclass: **G01H**
Proposal Removal Non-Limiting References		20 April 2009

Place	Reference to	Category	Proposed action	Comments
G01H	B06B	Informative (D)	Change into "generating or transmitting mechanical vibrations in solids without measurement"; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	G10K	Informative (D)	Change into "generating or transmitting mechanical vibrations in fluids without measurement"; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	G01C	Informative (D)	Change into "measuring distance, levels or bearings"; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	G01S	Application-type (D)	Change into "systems using the reflection or reradiation of acoustic waves, e.g. sonar systems" G01S 15/00; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	G01L 7/00	Informative (D)	Change into "measuring pressure of a fluid or fluent solid material" G01L 7/00-19/00; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	G01M 1/14	Application-type (D)	Change into "determining unbalance by oscillating the body to be tested and converting vibrations due to unbalance into electric variables" G01M 1/22; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	G01N	Application-type (D)	Change into "investigating or analysing materials by the use of ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves, or visualisation of the interior of objects by transmitting ultrasonic or sonic waves through the object" G01N 29/00; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	G01S 15/00	Application-type (D)	Change into "systems using the reflection or reradiation of acoustic waves, e.g. sonar systems"; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	G01V 1/00	Application-type (D)	Remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	G02F	Informative (D)	Change into "acousto-optical devices" G01F 1/11, G02F1/33; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	

Place	Reference to	Category	Proposed action	Comments
G01H	G03B 42/06	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	G10L	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	G11B	Non relevant (D, R)	Remove from the scheme	
G01H	H01L	Informative (D)	Change into "piezo-electric, electro-strictive or magneto-strictive elements" H01L 41/00; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01H	H03H 3/00	Application-type (D)	Change into H03H 3/007; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
7/00	G01N	Informative (R)	Remove from the scheme; add to group definitions	
7/00	G10K 15/08	Informative (D)	Change into "arrangements for producing a reverberation or echo sound in fluids" G10K 15/89; remove from the scheme; add to group definitions	

Roberto Iasevoli

GT Révision CIB – Projet de définition	Projet : **D175**
	Sous-classe : **G01H**
Proposition du rapporteur OEB	Date : 26/05/2009

G01H

Mesure des vibrations mécaniques ou des ondes ultrasonores, sonores ou infrasonores

Enoncé de la définition

La présente sous-classe couvre :

Appareils ou méthodes de mesure, ou de mesure associée à la production, de vibrations mécaniques ou analogues, et particulièrement de mesure des éléments suivants :

- vibrations mécaniques ou ondes ultrasonores, sonores ou infrasonores, en utilisant des moyens sensibles aux radiations, p.ex. des moyens optiques ;
- vibrations mécaniques ou ondes ultrasonores, sonores ou infrasonores par détection des changements dans les propriétés électriques ou magnétiques ;
- vibrations mécaniques ou ondes ultrasonores, sonores ou infrasonores, en utilisant d'autres moyens ;
- vibrations dans des solides en utilisant la conduction directe au détecteur ;
- vibrations dans des fluides en utilisant un détecteur dans un fluide ;
- vitesse de propagation des ondes ultrasonores, sonores ou infrasonores ;
- temps de réverbération ;
- fréquence de résonance ;
- impédance mécanique ou acoustique.

Liens entre secteurs d'une large portée

AUCUN.

Renvois influençant le classement dans la présente sous-classe

La présente sous-classe ne couvre pas :

Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente classe lorsque cette matière est spécialement adaptée à une application, utilisée à des fins particulières ou incorporée dans un système plus vaste :

Détermination du balourd en donnant à l'objet à tester un mouvement d'oscillation et en convertissant les vibrations dues au balourd en	G01M 1/22

variables électriques	
Essai de vibration sur des structures	G01M 7/02
Recherche ou analyse des matériaux par l'emploi d'ondes ultrasonores, sonores ou infrasonores ; visualisation de l'intérieur d'objets par transmission d'ondes ultrasonores ou sonores à travers l'objet	G01N 29/00
Systèmes utilisant la réflexion ou la reradiation d'ondes acoustiques, p.ex. sonars	G01S 15/00
Systèmes sonar pour la cartographie ou la représentation	G01S 15/89
Séismologie ; prospection ou détection sismique ou acoustique	G01V 1/00
Fabrication de résonateurs électromécaniques par des procédés comprenant la mesure de fréquence avec modification ultérieure du résonateur	H03H 3/007

Endroits par rapport auxquels la présente sous-classe est résiduaire :

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche :

Production ou transmission des vibrations mécaniques dans les solides, sans mesure	B06B
Mesure des distances, des niveaux ou des relèvements ; navigation ; instruments gyroscopiques ; photogrammétrie ou vidéogrammétrie	G01C
Mesure de la pression d'un fluide ou d'un matériau solide fluent	G01L 7/00-19/00
Dispositifs acousto-optiques	G02F 1/11, G02F 1/33
Production d'enregistrements par des techniques analogues à la photographie utilisant des ondes ultrasonores, sonores ou infrasonores	G03B 42/06
Instruments de musique	G10B-G10H
Production ou transmission des vibrations mécaniques dans les fluides, sans mesure	G10K
Dispositifs pour produire une réverbération sonore ou un écho dans des fluides	G10K 15/89
Analyse ou synthèse de la parole ; reconnaissance de la parole	G10L
Eléments piézo-électriques, électrostrictifs ou magnétostrictifs	H01L 41/00

Règles particulières de classement dans la présente sous-classe

AUCUNE.

Glossaire

Dans la présente sous-classe, les termes (ou expressions) suivants sont utilisés avec le sens ci-dessous indiqué :

Synonymes et mots-clés

Dans les documents de brevet, les abréviations suivantes sont souvent utilisées :

Dans les documents de brevet, les expressions (les mots) "---", "---" et "---" sont souvent utilisé(e)s comme synonymes.

Dans les documents de brevet, l'expression (le mot) "---" est souvent utilisé(e) à la place de "---" qui est employé dans le schéma de classification de la présente sous-classe.

Dans les documents de brevet, l'expression (le mot) "---" est souvent utilisé(e) au sens de "---".

The Canadian Intellectual Property Office CIPO OPIC L'Office de la propriété intellectuelle du Canada

Numéro de projet : D175
Classe/Sous-classe: G01H
Date : 22 mai 2009

CA aimerait apporter les suggestions suivantes en rapport avec la version française (Annexe 9).

- Dans la partie *Renvois influençant le classement dans la présent sous-classe*, la section « Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente classe… » devrait être « Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente sous-classe… ». (La version anglaise comporte aussi cette légère erreur terminologique.)

- L'expression « matériau solide fluent » (partie *Renvois indicatifs*, correspondant aux groupes G01L 7/00-19/00) devrait être remplacée par l'expression « matériau solide s'écoulant », si cette expression est adoptée dans les Projets de définition D173 et D174.

- Dans la partie *Renvois indicatifs*, le groupe G10K 15/89 (correspondant à l'énoncé « Dispositifs pour produire une réverbération sonore ou un écho dans des fluides ») devrait plutôt être G10K 15/08, puisque le groupe G10K 15/89 n'existe pas.

Claude Plante
Examinateur principal en classification de brevets

JAPAN PATENT OFFICE May 25, 2009

Project: D175 Subclass: G01H

JP Comment

JP appreciates EP Rapporteur's continuing efforts for this project, but would wish to raise a continuing misprint in one number of referenced subgroup.

In Annex 8 "Rapporteur Proposal-removal of non-limiting references", in the very last line for the reference from G01H 7/00 to G10K 15/08 (this is correct!!), in the "Proposed action" column, the misprinted symbol "G10K 15/89" is appearing which must be corrected to "G10K 15/08".

This confusion started in "Rapporteur Proposal-definition" in Annex 6, which was pointed out by CA by Remarks-Message dated October 9, 2008. However, the same misprint is appearing as above and also in the French version in Annex 9, of which kindly be taken care.

[END]

Origin: EP, Date: 25-MAY-09
Comments
EPO thanks CA and JP for spotting a recurring typo mistake: the reference to G10K 15/89 should be read G10K 15/08. We hope that this can be corrected by IBB during the approval phase, and in all relevant places of annexes 6, 8 and 9. -Roberto Iasevoli

IPC/D 176
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G01J**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	10.03.2008
3	Comments	Observations	US	30.06.2008
4	Comments	Observations	JP	01.07.2008
5	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	25.09.2008
6	Comments	Observations	CA	07.10.2008
7	Comments	Observations	US	16.10.2008
8	Comments	Observations	JP	29.10.2008
9	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	04.11.2008
10	French version	Version française	EP	27.04.2009
11	Comments	Observations	CA	20.05.2009

IPC/D 176
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G01J**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	10.03.2008
3	Comments	Observations	US	30.06.2008
4	Comments	Observations	JP	01.07.2008
5	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	25.09.2008
6	Comments	Observations	CA	07.10.2008
7	Comments	Observations	US	16.10.2008
8	Comments	Observations	JP	29.10.2008
9	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	04.11.2008
10	French version	Version française	EP	27.04.2009
11	Comments	Observations	CA	20.05.2009

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D176**	Subject: **Measurement of intensity ... of light...**	IPC range: **G01J**
Rapporteur Report		25 September 2008

Ref.: Annexes 2-5 of project file

Comments were received on the initial proposal (annex 2) from CA, JP, US.

US points to some (minor) corrections in the text of "Relationship" and in some listed references.
R acknowledges that these suggestions are pertinent and will incorporated in the next proposal.

1. JPO objects that references to H01L 27/14, H01L 31/00 and H01L 51/42 are only informative and asks the reason why Rapporteur believes them to be limiting references.

R refers to the Note (1) after subclass title, which states that G01J "covers detection [...] of light not otherwise provided for". (Solid state) light detectors per se are covered by the indicated places under H01L. Therefore **R** thought that it would be appropriate to indicate that G01J is "residual" with respect to H01L, as to light detectors per se.

2. Still JPO objects that G03B 27/72 and G03F 7/20 as examples of application-oriented places.

R refers to group G01J 1/00 which covers "photographic exposure meters (per se)".
G03B 27/72 covers "Controlling or varying light intensity, spectral composition or exposure time in photographic printing apparatus", and therefore R sees it as an application-place with respect to G01J 1/00. On the other hand, after G03B 27/72 a reference points to G01J as to exposure meters per se. And this reinforces **R**'s argument. Therefore **R** maintains that G03B 27/72 should be regarded as an application-type reference.
G03F 7/20 covers "Exposure in photomechanical, e.g. photolithographic, production of textured or patterned surfaces, e.g. printing surfaces". Once more, likewise as for G03B 27/72, this place could be see as an application-place with respect to G01J 1/00.

Before issuing a new proposal, **R** would like to check (especially with JPO) whether there is consensus about **R**'s arguments on points 1 and 2 above.

Roberto Iasevoli

The Canadian Intellectual Property Office CIPO OPIC L'Office de la propriété intellectuelle du Canada

Project Number	**: D176**
Class/Subclass	**: G01J**
Date	**: October 7, 2008**

CA has reviewed the Rapporteur report of Annex 5, and following the Rapporteur's request, would like to make the following comments:

- CA agrees with the Rapporteur concerning the limiting references H01L 27/14, H01L 31/00, and H01L 51/42. In view of current Note 1 of Subclass G01J, and the function-oriented nature of the groups mentioned, there is a definite risk of overlap. Furthermore, a similar potential overlap exists between Subclasses H01L and G01T, and it has been resolved by a limiting reference pointing to H01L 31/00 in the Definition of Subclass G01T.

- CA agrees with the Rapporteur concerning Subgroup G03B 27/72 (especially in view of 2-dot Subgroup G03B 27/74), but thinks that JP has a point concerning Subgroup G03F 7/20. The relationship between "exposure" [for photomechanical production of textured or patterned surfaces] and "Light measuring, not otherwise provided for" is weak, and hence little risk of overlap exists.

Claude Plante
Senior Patent Classification Examiner

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
IPC Revision Working Group	
Topic: D176 – G01J	**Date: 16 October 2008**

US thanks the Rapporteur for RR in annex 5. US can agree to with the opinion of the Rapporteur and presumes that a final RP will be posted.

JAPAN PATENT OFFICE

October 29, 2008

Project: D176 Subclass: G01J

JP Comment

JP appreciates careful explanation by EP Rapporteur in Annex 5. We also reviewed supplemental comments by CA (Annex 6) and US (Annex 7).

1. References to H01L 27/14, H01L 31/00 and H01L 51/42

After reviewing this matter in the light of Rapporteur's explanation as well as of CA and US opinions, JP has come to realize that these three references could be "Limiting references." JP would support to retain these three references in the section of "This subclass does not cover".

2. References to G03B 27/72 and G03F 7/20

Special thanks is given to CA comment concerning the reference to G03F 7/20. In the previous comment, JP had felt such reference unjustifiable due to the fact that there is no reference to G01J from the side of G03F 7/20. However, in view of the explanation by Rapporteur, JP now understands the needs for these references. JP would agree with retaining G03B 27/72 and G03F 7/20, both as reference of application-oriented place.

[END]

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: **D176**
	Subclass: **G01J**
EPO Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 04-11-2008

G01J

Measurement of intensity, velocity, spectral content, polarisation, phase or pulse characteristics of infra-red, visible or ultra-violet light;
Colorimetry;
Radiation pyrometry

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Photometry, e.g. photographic exposure meters, per se (covered by G01J1/00).
Spectrometers and spectroscopy, e.g. measurement of the spectral content of incident light and spectroscopic methods used in this process (covered by G01J3/00).
Colorimetry (covered by G01J3/00).
Polarimeters and polarimetry, e.g. passive measurement of the state of polarisation of incident light (covered by G01J4/00).
Measurement of temperature by optical means, e.g. remote detection of infrared radiation, non-contact measurement (covered by G01J5/00).
Measurement of the velocity of light (covered by G01J7/00).
Measurement of optical phase differences, e.g. wave-front or coherence measurements (covered by G01J9/00).
Measurement of the wavelength of incident light (covered by G01J9/00).
Measurement of the characteristics of optical pulses (covered by G01J11/00).
Detection of the presence or absence of infra-red, visible, or ultra-violet light, not otherwise provided for.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

G01J relates in general to the passive optical detection per se of the quantities referred to in the Definition Statement. Arrangements or methods in a specific related field are to be found in their environment.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Non-optical measurement of temperature	G01K
Semiconductor devices sensitive to light	H01L 27/14 H01L 31/00 H01L 51/42

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Measuring length, thickness or similar linear dimensions by optical means; Instruments therefor	G01B 11/00 G01B 9/00
Investigating or analysing materials by optical means, e.g. by ellipsometry	G01N 21/00
Prospecting or detecting by optical means	G01V 8/00
Controlling or varying light intensity, spectral composition or exposure time in photographic printing apparatus	G03B 27/72
Exposure in photomechanical, e.g. photolithographic, production of textured or patterned surfaces, e.g. printing surfaces	G03F 7/20

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Apparatus for testing or examining the human eyes	A61B 3/00
Colour determination, selection, or synthesis in painting or artistic drawing, e.g. use of colour tables	B44D 3/00
Indicating or recording measured values in general	G01D
Testing of optical apparatus	G01M 11/00
Sunshine-duration recorders	G01W 1/12
Optical elements, systems or apparatus, e.g. filters, gratings, lenses	G02B
Control of light by devices or arrangements the optical operation thereof is modified by changing the optical properties of the medium of the devices or arrangements	G02F 1/00
Control of light, e.g. intensity, colour, phase	G05D 25/00
Mass spectrometers	H01J 49/00
Thermoelectric elements per se	H01L 35/00 H01L 37/00

Light sources

Discharge lamps	H01J 61/00 H01J 63/00 H01J 65/00
Electric incandescent lamps	H01K
Semiconductor devices for light emission, e.g. LED's	H01L 27/15 H01L 33/00 H01L 51/50
Lasers	H01S 3/00 H01S 5/00
Electric arc lamps	H05B 31/00
Electroluminescent light sources	H05B 33/00

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

GT Révision CIB – Projet de définition	Projet : **D176**
	Sous-classe : **G01J**
Proposition du rapporteur OEB	Date : 04-11-2008

G01J

Mesure de l'intensité, de la vitesse, du spectre, de la polarisation, de la phase ou des caractéristiques d'impulsions de lumière infrarouge, visible ou ultraviolette ; Colorimétrie ; Pyrométrie des radiations

Enoncé de la définition

La présente sous-classe couvre :

Photométrie, p.ex. posemètres photographiques en soi (matière couverte par G01J1/00).
Spectromètres et spectroscopie, p.ex. mesure du spectre de la lumière incidente et méthodes spectroscopiques utilisées dans ce procédé (matière couverte par G01J3/00).
Colorimétrie (matière couverte par G01J3/00).
Polarimètres et polarimétrie, p.ex. mesure passive de l'état de polarisation de la lumière incidente (matière couverte par G01J4/00).
Mesure de température par des moyens optiques, p.ex. télédétection de rayonnement infrarouge, mesure sans contact (matière couverte par G01J5/00).
Mesure de la vitesse de la lumière (matière couverte par G01J7/00).
Mesure du déphasage des rayons lumineux, p.ex. mesures de front d'onde ou de cohérence (matière couverte par G01J9/00).
Mesure de la longueur d'onde de la lumière incidente (matière couverte par G01J9/00).
Mesure des caractéristiques d'impulsions lumineuses (matière couverte par G01J11/00).
Détection de la présence ou de l'absence de lumière infrarouge, visible ou ultraviolette, non prévue ailleurs.

Liens entre secteurs d'une large portée

G01J se rapporte en général à la détection optique passive, en soi, des quantités évoquées dans l'énoncé de la définition. Les dispositifs ou méthodes utilisés dans un domaine spécifique connexe se trouvent dans leur contexte.

Renvois influençant le classement dans la présente sous-classe

La présente sous-classe ne couvre pas :

Mesure non optique de la température	G01K
Dispositifs à semi-conducteurs sensibles à la lumière	H01L 27/14

	H01L 31/00 H01L 51/42

Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente classe lorsque cette matière est spécialement adaptée à une application, utilisée à des fins particulières ou incorporée dans un système plus vaste :

Mesure de la longueur, de l'épaisseur ou d'autres dimensions linéaires analogues, par l'utilisation de moyens optiques ; instruments à cet effet	G01B 11/00 G01B 9/00
Recherche ou analyse des matériaux par l'utilisation de moyens optiques, p.ex. par ellipsométrie	G01N 21/00
Prospection ou détection par des moyens optiques	G01V 8/00
Réglage ou variation de l'intensité lumineuse, de la composition spectrale ou de la durée d'exposition dans les appareils de tirage photographique	G03B 27/72
Exposition dans la production par voie photomécanique, p.ex. photolithographique, de surfaces texturées, p.ex. pour des surfaces à imprimer	G03F 7/20

Endroits par rapport auxquels la présente sous-classe est résiduaire :

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche :

Appareils pour l'examen optique ou clinique des yeux	A61B 3/00
Détermination, choix ou synthèse des couleurs, en peinture ou dessin artistique, p.ex. emploi d'une gamme d'échantillons de couleurs	B44D 3/00
Indication ou enregistrement de valeurs mesurées en général	G01D
Essai des appareils d'optique	G01M 11/00
Enregistreurs de durée de l'insolation	G01W 1/12
Eléments, systèmes ou appareils optiques, p.ex. filtres, grilles et réseaux, lentilles	G02B
Commande de la lumière par des dispositifs ou systèmes dont le fonctionnement optique est modifié en changeant les propriétés optiques du milieu constituant ces dispositifs ou systèmes	G02F 1/00
Commande de la lumière, p.ex. intensité, couleur, phase	G05D 25/00
Spectromètres de masse	H01J 49/00
Eléments thermo-électriques en soi	H01L 35/00 H01L 37/00

<u>Sources de lumière</u>

Lampes à décharge	H01J 61/00 H01J 63/00 H01J 65/00

Lampes à incandescence	H01K
Dispositifs à semi-conducteurs pour l'émission de lumière, p.ex. diodes électroluminescentes	H01L 27/15 H01L 33/00 H01L 51/50
Lasers	H01S 3/00 H01S 5/00
Lampes à arc électrique	H05B 31/00
Sources de lumière électroluminescentes	H05B 33/00

Règles particulières de classement dans la présente sous-classe

AUCUNE.

Glossaire

Dans la présente sous-classe, les termes (ou expressions) suivants sont utilisés avec le sens ci-dessous indiqué :

Synonymes et mots-clés

Dans les documents de brevet, les abréviations suivantes sont souvent utilisées :

Dans les documents de brevet, les expressions (les mots) "---", "---" et "---" sont souvent utilisé(e)s comme synonymes.

Dans les documents de brevet, l'expression (le mot) "---" est souvent utilisé(e) à la place de "---" qui est employé dans le schéma de classification de la présente sous-classe.

Dans les documents de brevet, l'expression (le mot) "---" est souvent utilisé(e) au sens de "---".

The Canadian Intellectual Property Office CIPO OPIC L'Office de la propriété intellectuelle du Canada

Numéro de projet : D176
Classe/Sous-classe: G01J
Date : 19 mai 2009

CA approuve la version française (Annexe 10), mais aimerait mentionner la présence d'une légère erreur terminologique : Dans la partie « Renvois influençant le classement… », la section intitulée « Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente classe… » devrait plutôt être intitulée « Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente sous-classe… ». (La version anglaise (Annexe 9) comporte aussi cette erreur terminologique.)

Claude Plante
Examinateur principal en classification de brevets

IPC/D 177
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G01K**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	27.03.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	07.04.2008
4	Comments	Observations	JP	27.06.2008
5	Comments	Observations	US	30.06.2008
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	25.09.2008
7	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	25.09.2008
8	Comments	Observations	US	07.10.2008
9	Comments	Observations	CA	09.10.2008
10	Comments	Observations	GB	18.11.2008
11	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	26.02.2009
12	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	26.02.2009
13	Comments	Observations	US	27.04.2009
14	Comments	Observations	DE	29.05.2009

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D177**	Subject: **Measuring temperature ... quantity of heat ...**	IPC range: **G01K**
Rapporteur Report		25 February 2009

Ref.: Annexes 7-9 of project file

Comments were received on the latest proposal (annex 7) from US (annex 8), CA (annex 9) and GB (annex 10).

US feel that the language used in the Glossary section for the meaning of "thermometer" is incorrect. Also US remark that the Glossary section would be for the meaning of the term, and not how it is used in the subclass.
GB agrees with US regarding the removal of the text in the Glossary section. GB also feels that a glossary definition of 'thermometer' is not required, as the term is commonly understood.
R has to note that the given meaning of "thermometer" in the Glossary follows *verbatim* the existing Note (1) after G01K.
Also **R** has to disagree with US (and GB) that the Glossary section is for a meaning of the term and not how it is used in the subclass.
From the Guidelines for Drafting Definitions (emphasis added):

> This section [Glossary] consists of definitions for <u>significant words or phrases found in the titles</u> or definition statements. This is particularly useful when the <u>terms are used in a more precise or restricted manner than their common usage</u>.
> This section begins with the phrase: "In this subclass (group) the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meanings indicated."
> Terms found exclusively in patent documents or in technical literature, but not in the scheme or the definition statement, should normally appear in the next section.

it appears necessary to quote the special meaning of "thermometer" as it is given in Note (1) after G01K because the term is used here in a somewhat different manner than the common usage:

Wikipedia:	The thermometer is a device that measures temperature or temperature gradient using a variety of different principles
G01K-Note(1):	"thermometer" includes thermally-sensitive elements not provided for in other subclasses

Therefore, **R** will leave the current "meaning" of "thermometer" as is in the Glossary section, but he welcomes any other suggestion to solve or improve the current situation.

CA suggested to add 5 more "application-type" references relating to the use of thermally-sensitive elements.
R accepts CA suggestions, but reminds that (as CA also remarked) it can become challenging, if not impossible, to list and monitor all IPC places which relate to the use of thermally-sensitive elements.

Roberto Iasevoli

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: **D177**
	Subclass: **G01K**
EPO Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 26/05/2009

G01K

Measuring temperature;
Measuring quantity of heat;
Thermally-sensitive elements not otherwise provided for

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Apparatus or methods for measuring temperature, i.e. thermometers. The following types of thermometers are therefore covered, the list being non exhaustive:

- thermometers giving results other than momentary value of temperature
- thermometers based on the expansion or contraction of a material
- thermometers based on the use of electric or magnetic elements directly sensitive to heat
- thermometers based on movements caused by redistribution of weight, e.g. tilting thermometer
- thermometers based on other physical or chemical changes

Testing or calibrating of thermometers.
Apparatus or methods for measuring quantity of heat, i.e. calorimeters.
Testing or calibrating of calorimeters.
Thermally-sensitive elements not otherwise provided for.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

Subclass G01K covers temperature measurements per se, except when performed by radiation pyrometry, in which case the subject matter is classified in subclass G01J.

When temperature measurements are used for the investigation of material properties (e.g. flaw detection), that subject matter falls under the scope of G01N 25/00.

For subject matter relating to sensing temperature changes for compensating measurements of other variables or for compensating readings of instruments for variations in temperature, see G01D or relevant subclass for variable measured.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Radiation pyrometry	G01J 5/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Measuring temperature of human body parts for diagnostic purposes	A61B 5/01
Heat-sensitive devices for control of fire-fighting equipment	A62C 37/00
Heat-sensitive sheets for use in thermography	B41M 5/00
Measuring temperature specially adapted to boreholes or wells	E21B 47/06
Arrangements of temperature sensing elements for regulating or controlling in gas turbines	F01D 17/08
Use of thermally-sensitive elements in systems controlling or regulating combustion	F23N 5/02-5/14
Flow measurement by thermal means	G01F 1/68
Investigating or analysing materials by use of thermal means, e.g. by calorimetry	G01N 25/00 G01N 25/20
Meteorology; Indication of human comfort	G01W 1/00; G01W 1/17
Temperature control	G05D 23/00
Fire alarms	G08B 17/00-19/00
Thermally-sensitive members for thermally-actuated switches	H01H 37/00
Temperature sensing in car batteries	H01M 10/48
Control or measuring devices, e.g. for temperature of metal, in the art of manufacture of metal sheets, wires, rods, tubes or profiles	B21C 31/00
Arrangement of indicating or measuring devices, e.g. for temperature or viscosity of the fused mass, in the art of casting of metals	B22D 2/00
Measuring, controlling or regulating of temperature in injection moulding	B29C 45/78
Indicating devices concerning coolant temperature, in the art of cooling of machines, engines, or international-combustion engines	F01P 11/16
Structural combination of nuclear reactor elements with sensitive instruments for measuring temperature	G21C 17/112

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Thermometer holders specially adapted to veterinary purposes	A61D 13/00
Ambient temperature regulation specially adapted to passengers or goods spaces in vehicles	B60H 1/00

Heating in general	F24B, F24C, F24D
Bimetallic elements	G12B 1/02
Compensating for the effects of temperature on instruments	G12B 7/00
Thermistors, i.e. thermo-resistors	H01C 7/00-7/04
Electrolytic temperature-sensitive devices	H01G 9/21
Peltier elements	H01L 23/38
Semiconductor or solid-state thermo-electric or thermo-magnetic devices	H01L 35/00, H01L 37/00

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

thermometer	includes thermally-sensitive elements not provided for in other subclasses

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

TTI	Time Temperature Integrator
PTAT	Proportional To Absolute Temperature
CTAT	Complementary To Absolute Temperature
NTC/PTC	Negative/Positive Temperature Coefficient
RTD	Resistance Temperature Detector
3-wire / 4-wire RTD's	Resistive temperature detectors with additional lead wire for compensation purposes
OTDR	Optical Time Domain Reflectometry
FBG	Fiber Bragg Grating
SAW/BAW	Surface/Bulk Acoustic Wave
HVAC	Heating Ventilation Air Conditioning
TAT/SAT	Total/Static Air Temperature (in aircrafts)

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
IPC Revision Working Group	
Topic: D177	**Date: 27 April 2009**

US thanks the Rapporteur for Annexes 11 and 12. US would like to suggest that the information related to the term "thermometer" may best be served under relationships between large subject matter areas (e.g., special rules of classification between subclasses) rather than a glossary term. As the Rapporteur mentioned the language comes directly from a note “Note(1): "thermometer" includes thermally-sensitive elements not provided for in other subclasses” and therefore an alterative may be to placed it under relationships between large subject matter areas section. In any case, this issue will not keep us from supporting the proposal and we hope that this suggest can help resolve the situation.

DEUTSCHES PATENT- UND MARKENAMT German Patent and Trade Mark Office	Class/Subcl.: **G01K** Date : 28.05.2009
DE comments - D 177	

We thank EP for the revised proposal (Annex 12), which is fully supported by DE experts. We would like to point out that the reference to F01P 11/16 (second last entry under "relevant references") should read "..., or internal combustion engines" (instead of the current phrase "international combustion engines").

Markus Seitz

IPC/D 178
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G01L**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	14.04.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	06.05.2008
4	Comments	Observations	JP	16.06.2008
5	Comments	Observations	US	09.07.2008
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	26.09.2008
7	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	26.09.2008
8	Comments	Observations	US	16.10.2008
9	French version	Version française	EP	27.04.2009
10	Comments	Observations	CA	25.05.2009

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D178**	Subject: **Measuring force, stress ... fluid pressure**	IPC range: **G01L**
Rapporteur Report		26 September 2008

Ref.: Annexes 2-5 of project file

Comments were received on the initial proposal (annex 2) from CA, JP, US.

No office had major objections to the first proposal, while all offices suggested a number of additions/corrections to the listed references.
R acknowledges that most of the received suggestions are pertinent, with few exceptions: references to B65H 26/04, B65H 63/00, as mostly relating to warning devices, do not really seem useful under G01L. A reference to B65H 59/40 for "Application of tension indicators for adjusting or controlling tension in filamentary material" will be added as informative.

CA is concerned that the last bullet point “pressure in inlet or exhaust ducts of internal-combustion engines”, under the heading “Apparatus or methods for measuring fluid pressure, and particularly:”, could lead to classification ambiguity with the subject matter of subgroup G01M 15/09.
In reply, **R** notes that this bullet point stems from the group G01L 23/24.
A reference to G01M 15/08-15/09 for "Testing of engines by monitoring pressure in cylinders or fluid ducts" has been added as application-type to make the picture clearer.

R tends to agree with CA that informative reference to G07C 5/00 for "Registering or indicating the working of vehicles" is not really useful. US disagreed with CA, but maybe they will reconsider.

Furthermore **R** tried to improve the categorization of "Informative references" and "References relevant to classification". But as force/pressure sensitive elements are really used everywhere, it is not easy to identify the true "limiting references", and **R** invites offices to carefully check once more if they can agree with the proposed two sets.

Roberto Iasevoli

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: **D178**
	Subclass: **G01L**
EPO Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 13/11/08

G01L

Measuring force, stress, torque work, mechanical power, mechanical efficiency, or fluid pressure

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Apparatus or methods for measuring force, stress, torque or the like, and particularly:

- force or stress, in general;
- torque, work, mechanical power, or mechanical efficiency, in general;
- force, e.g. due to impact, work, mechanical power, or torque, adapted for special purposes.

Apparatus or methods for measuring fluid pressure, and particularly:

- the steady or quasi-steady pressure of a fluid or a fluent solid material by mechanical or fluid pressure-sensitive elements; by electric or magnetic pressure-sensitive elements; by optical or acoustic means, or other means.
- differences of two or more pressure values, or two or more pressure values simultaneously;
- tyre pressure or the pressure in other inflated bodies;
- pressure in inlet or exhaust ducts of internal-combustion engines.

Apparatus or methods for measuring, indicating or recording:

- rapid changes, such as oscillations, in the pressure of steam, gas or liquid;
- work or energy of steam, internal-combustion, or other fluid-pressure engines from the condition of the working fluid;
- knocks in internal-combustions engines.

Vacuum gauges.
Testing or calibrating of the apparatus as described.
Details or accessories of the apparatus as described .

Relationship between large subject matter areas

For subject matter relating to sensing pressure changes for compensating measurements of other variables or for compensating readings of instruments for variations in pressure, see G01D or other relevant subclasses for the variable measured.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Weighing	G01G

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Measuring blood pressure for diagnostic purposes	A61B 5/02
Measuring fluid pressure within the human body other than blood pressure for diagnostic purposes	A61B 5/03
Measuring muscular strength or the force of a muscular blow for diagnostic purposes	A61B 5/22
Measuring tension, compression or force specially adapted for metal-rolling mills	B21B 38/06, B21B 38/08
Devices for measuring, signalling, controlling, or distributing tyre pressure specially adapted for being mounted on vehicles	B60C 23/00
Applications of tensometers to sewing machine elements	D05B 47/06
Measuring pressure in boreholes or wells	E21B 47/06
Levelling between separate points or surveyors' levels by using barometric means	G01C 5/06
Measuring volume flow, mass flow or volume of fluid by measuring pressure or differential pressure	G01F 1/34, G01F 1/88, G01F 22/02
Measuring or indicating level of liquid or fluent material by measurement of pressure	G01F 23/14
Weighing apparatus wherein the balancing is effected by fluid action, with means for measuring the pressure imposed by the load on a liquid	G01G 5/04
Testing of engines by monitoring pressure in cylinders or fluid ducts	G01M 15/08-15/09
Meteorology	G01W 1/00

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Torque indicators in wrenches or screwdrivers	B25B 23/14
Application of tension indicators for adjusting or controlling tension in filamentary material	B65H 59/40
Tyre-inflating valves	B60C 29/00
Supplying air for tyre inflation	B60S 5/04
Devices for indicating tension in warp or cloth	D03D 49/18
Indicating lubricant pressure in machines	F01M 1/20
Indicating coolant pressure in machines or engines	F01P 11/18
Special adaptations of indicating, measuring, or monitoring equipment for the filling or discharging of vessels	F17C 13/02
Embedding pads or other sensitive devices in paving or other road surfaces	E01F 11/00
Measuring the deformation in a solid by mechanical strain gauges	G01B 5/30
Measuring the deformation in a solid by resistance strain gauges	G01B 7/16
Measuring the deformation in a solid by optical strain gauges	G01B 11/16

Measurement of mechanical vibrations or ultrasonic, sonic or infrasonic waves	G01H
Testing steering behaviour of vehicles	G01M 17/06
Investigating strength properties of solid materials by application of mechanical stress	G01N 3/00
Devices characterised by the determination of the variation of atmospheric pressure with height to measure the vertical components of speed	G01P 3/62
Scanning-probe techniques using atomic force microscopy	G01Q
Hollow bodies deformable or displaceable under pressure, e.g. Bourdon tubes, bellows	G12B 1/04
Switches operated by change of fluid pressure	H01H 35/24
Controllable semiconductor devices by variation of applied mechanical force, e.g. of pressure	H01L 29/84
Dynamo-electric clutches; Dynamo-electric brakes	H02K 49/00

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
IPC Revision Working Group	
Topic: D178 – G01L	**Date: 16 October 2008**

US thanks the Rapporteur for RR and RP of annexes 6 and 7, respectively. US can agree to the RP of annex 7. Also if other commenting offices can not agree with G07C 5/00 as a helpful informative reference, then US is willing to withdraw its suggestion.

GT Révision CIB – Projet de définition	Projet : **D178**
	Sous-classe : **G01L**
Proposition du rapporteur OEB	Date : 26/05/2009

G01L

Mesure des forces, des contraintes, des couples, du travail, de la puissance mécanique, du rendement mécanique ou de la pression des fluides

Enoncé de la définition

La présente sous-classe couvre :

Appareils ou méthodes de mesure des forces, des contraintes, des couples ou analogues, et en particulier :

- forces ou contraintes en général ;
- couples, travail, puissance mécanique ou rendement mécanique en général ;
- forces, p.ex. produites par un choc, travail, puissance mécanique ou couples, adaptés
  à des buts particuliers.

Appareils ou méthodes de mesure de la pression des fluides et en particulier :

- de la pression permanente ou quasi permanente d'un fluide ou d'un matériau solide fluent par des éléments mécaniques ou hydrauliques sensibles à la pression ; par des éléments électriques ou magnétiques sensibles à la pression ; par des moyens optiques ou acoustiques, ou par d'autres moyens.
- des différences entre deux ou plusieurs valeurs de la pression, ou mesure simultanée de deux ou de plusieurs valeurs de la pression ;
- mesure de la pression des pneumatiques ou dans d'autres corps gonflés ;
- de la pression dans les collecteurs d'admission ou d'échappement de moteurs à combustion interne.

Appareils ou méthodes de mesure, d'indication ou d'enregistrement :

- des changements rapides tels que des oscillations, dans la pression des vapeurs, des gaz ou des liquides ;
- du travail ou de l'énergie des moteurs à vapeur, à combustion interne ou des moteurs à autres pressions de fluides à partir de l'état du fluide moteur ;
- des cognements dans les moteurs à combustion interne.

Indicateurs de vide.
Essai ou étalonnage des appareils décrits.
Parties constitutives ou accessoires des appareils décrits.

Liens entre secteurs d'une large portée

Pour la matière relative à la détection des variations de pression pour compenser les mesures d'autres variables ou pour compenser les variations de pression dans les

relevés des instruments, voir G01D ou les autres sous-classes appropriées à la variable mesurée.

Renvois influençant le classement dans la présente sous-classe

La présente sous-classe ne couvre pas :

Pesée	G01G

Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente classe lorsque cette matière est spécialement adaptée à une application, utilisée à des fins particulières ou incorporée dans un système plus vaste :

Mesure de la pression sanguine à des fins de diagnostic	A61B 5/02
Mesure de la pression des fluides, à l'intérieur du corps humain, autre que la pression du sang, à des fins de diagnostic	A61B 5/03
Mesure de la force musculaire ou de la force d'un coup donné par un muscle, à des fins de diagnostic	A61B 5/22
Mesure de la tension, compression ou force, spécialement adaptée aux laminoirs	B21B 38/06, B21B 38/08
Dispositifs pour mesurer, signaler, commander ou distribuer la pression des pneumatiques, spécialement adaptés pour être montés sur des véhicules	B60C 23/00
Adaptations d'appareils de mesure de la tension à des éléments de machines à coudre	D05B 47/06
Mesure de la pression dans les trous de forage ou les puits	E21B 47/06
Nivellement entre des points séparés, utilisant des moyens barométriques ou niveaux à lunette utilisant des moyens barométriques	G01C 5/06
Mesure du débit volumétrique, du débit massique ou du volume d'un fluide en mesurant la pression ou la différence de pression	G01F 1/34, G01F 1/88, G01F 22/02
Mesure ou indication du niveau des liquides ou des matériaux fluents en mesurant la pression	G01F 23/14
Appareils de pesée dans lesquels l'équilibrage est assuré par l'action d'un fluide, avec des moyens pour mesurer la pression de la charge sur un liquide	G01G 5/04
Essais sur des moteurs par contrôle de la pression dans les cylindres ou dans les conduits de fluide	G01M 15/08-15/09
Météorologie	G01W 1/00

Endroits par rapport auxquels la présente sous-classe est résiduaire :

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche :

Indicateurs de couple dans les clés ou les tournevis	B25B 23/14

Utilisation d'indicateurs de tension pour régler ou commander la tension du matériau filiforme	B65H 59/40
Valves de gonflage de pneumatiques	B60C 29/00
Alimentation en air pour le gonflage des pneumatiques	B60S 5/04
Dispositifs permettant d'indiquer la tension de la chaîne ou du tissu	D03D 49/18
Indicateurs de la pression du lubrifiant dans les machines	F01M 1/20
Indicateurs de la pression de l'agent de refroidissement dans les machines ou les moteurs	F01P 11/18
Adaptations spéciales des dispositifs indicateurs, de mesure ou de contrôle pour le remplissage ou le vidage des récipients	F17C 13/02
Bourrelets ou autres dispositifs sensibles encastrés dans les pavés ou autres revêtements routiers	E01F 11/00
Mesure de la déformation dans un solide par des indicateurs de déformation mécanique	G01B 5/30
Mesure de la déformation dans un solide au moyen de jauges de contrainte à résistance	G01B 7/16
Mesure de la déformation dans un solide par des indicateurs optiques de déformation	G01B 11/16
Mesure des vibrations mécaniques ou des ondes ultrasonores, sonores ou infrasonores	G01H
Essai du comportement de la direction de véhicules	G01M 17/06
Recherche des propriétés mécaniques des matériaux solides par application d'une contrainte mécanique	G01N 3/00
Dispositifs caractérisés par l'utilisation de la variation de la pression atmosphérique avec l'altitude pour mesurer la composante verticale de la vitesse	G01P 3/62
Techniques de sonde à balayage utilisant la microscopie à forces atomiques	G01Q
Corps creux ayant des parties déformables ou déplaçables sous l'effet de la pression, p.ex. tubes de Bourdon, soufflets	G12B 1/04
Interrupteurs actionnés par le changement de pression du fluide	H01H 35/24
Dispositifs semi-conducteurs commandés par la variation d'une force mécanique appliquée, p.ex. d'une pression	H01L 29/84
Embrayages dynamo-électriques ; Freins dynamo-électriques	H02K 49/00

Règles particulières de classement dans la présente sous-classe

AUCUNE.

Glossaire

Dans la présente sous-classe, les termes (ou expressions) suivants sont utilisés avec le sens ci-dessous indiqué :

Synonymes et mots-clés

Dans les documents de brevet, les abréviations suivantes sont souvent utilisées :

Dans les documents de brevet, les expressions (les mots) "---", "---" et "---" sont souvent utilisé(e)s comme synonymes.

Dans les documents de brevet, l'expression (le mot) "---" est souvent utilisé(e) à la place de "---" qui est employé dans le schéma de classification de la présente sous-classe.

Dans les documents de brevet, l'expression (le mot) "---" est souvent utilisé(e) au sens de "---".

The Canadian Intellectual Property Office CIPO OPIC L'Office de la propriété intellectuelle du Canada

Numéro de projet : D178
Classe/Sous-classe: G01L
Date : 25 mai 2009

CA aimerait apporter les suggestions suivantes en rapport avec la version française (Annexe 9).

- Dans la partie *Renvois influençant le classement dans la présent sous-classe*, la section « Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente classe… » devrait être « Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente sous-classe… ». (La version anglaise comporte aussi cette légère erreur terminologique.)

- L'expression « matériau solide fluent » (partie *Énoncé de la définition*, dans la catégorie *Appareils ou méthodes de mesure de la pression des fluides et en particulier*) devrait être remplacée par l'expression « matériau solide s'écoulant », si cette expression est adoptée dans les Projets de définition D173, D174 et D175.

Claude Plante
Examinateur principal en classification de brevets

IPC/D 179
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 08.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G01R**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	25.08.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	28.08.2008
4	Comments	Observations	JP	27.10.2008
5	Comments	Observations	US	03.11.2008
6	Comments	Observations	CA	05.11.2008
7	Comments	Observations	JP	12.12.2008
8	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	19.01.2009
9	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	19.01.2009
10	Comments	Observations	US	21.01.2009
11	Comments	Observations	JP	26.02.2009
12	Comments	Observations	DE	08.06.2009

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D179**	Subject: **Measuring electric or magnetic variables**	IPC range: **G01R**
Rapporteur Report		19-01-2009

Ref.: Annexes 2-7 of project file

Comments were received by CA (annexes 3, 6), JPO (annexes 4, 7), USPTO (annex 5) on the initial proposal of annex 2.

Definition statement

R has tried to improve the previous proposal by adding two headings for "electric variables/properties" and "magnetic variables/properties".

Relationship between large subject matter areas

idem

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system

idem

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual

Electrical testing characterised by what is being tested not provided for elsewhere (group G01R 31/00)

CA would like to see many more places listed here.

R can accept some of the indications, e.g.

- H03M 1/10 "testing of A/D or D/A conversion" (supported by USPTO as well)
- H04N 17/00 "testing of television systems or details thereof"

He is however puzzled about others, e.g.

- H04N 10/08 and 17/00: they relate to "transmission testing", so they would not fit under G01R 31/00;
- G11B 5/455: it relates to "testing of magnetic heads", so it would not fit under G01R 31/00
- H01H 73/12 and 85/30: **R** feels (like JPO and USPTO) that these places do not fit under "electrical testing"

R revised the whole list under this section, but he would welcome more comments.

Informative references

CA suggested to remove a number of informative references.

R is ready to adopt many of the CA suggestions, but once more he would welcome more comments in that regard. The references to-be-deleted (according to CA suggestions) are in *Italics* in the new proposal.

Besides, **R** has tried to improve the previous proposal by adding two headings for "electric variables/properties" and "magnetic variables/properties".

Glossary of terms

USPTO objected that the languages used in this section is incorrect.

R remarks that the text used matches *verbatim* (Wikipedia: "word for word") the Note (2) after G01R title.

Conclusions

R received a first set of very useful comments on this quite difficult Definition.

The new proposal takes into account many of the suggestions and comments received, and **R**'s analysis above.

In view of the objective difficulty of this project, **R** would definitely welcome more comments and feedbacks.

Roberto Iasevoli

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: **D179**
	Subclass: **G01R**
EPO Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 20/01/2009

G01R

Measuring electric variables; Measuring magnetic variables

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Measuring electric variables or properties

Measuring electric variables directly, i.e. electromechanical instruments (see Glossary of terms) where the measured electric variables directly effect the indication of the measured value.
Measuring electric variables by derivation from other electric variables, i.e. arrangements (see Glossary of terms) involving circuitry to obtain an indication of a measured value by deriving, calculating or otherwise processing electric variables, e.g. by comparison with another value.
Measuring or investigating electric properties of materials.
Electric testing of analogue or digital electric devices, apparatus or networks, or measuring their characteristics.
Indicating presence or sign of current or voltage.
The following technical subjects are therefore covered, the list being non-exhaustive:

- measuring time integral of electric power or current, e.g. of consumption
- displaying electric variables or waveforms
- measuring currents or voltages or for indicating presence or sign thereof
- measuring electric power or power factor
- measuring time integral of electric power or current, e.g. by electronic methods
- measuring frequencies; analysing frequency spectra
- measuring phase angle between a voltage and a current or between voltages or currents
- measuring resistance, reactance, impedance, or electric characteristics derived therefrom
- testing electric properties of apparatus, e.g. discharge tubes, amplifiers, transistors, integrated circuits
- locating electric faults
- electrical testing characterised by what is being tested not provided for elsewhere
- testing for digital signal parameters (delay, skew, signal level) and characterization of device performance by use of test patterns; test

apparatus or integrated test circuits therefor; methods for test pattern generation
- details, testing or calibrating of related instruments or arrangements

Measuring magnetic variables or properties

Measuring magnetic variables.
Measuring or investigating magnetic properties of materials.
The following technical subjects are therefore covered, the list being non-exhaustive:

- measuring direction or amount of magnetic fields, or measuring characteristics of magnetic materials
- apparatus based on magnetic resonance, e.g. NMR, MRI, EPR, ESR (see Synonyms and Keywords) and not specially adapted for a particular application
- details, testing or calibrating of related instruments or arrangements

Relationship between large subject matter areas

Investigating electric variables or properties
This subclass covers measuring or investigating electric properties of materials, whereas measuring or investigating non-electric properties of materials by the use of electric means is covered by group G01N 27/00.

Investigating magnetic variable or properties
This subclass also covers, under group G01R 33/00, measuring or investigating magnetic properties of materials, whereas measuring or investigating non-magnetic properties of materials by the use of magnetic means is covered by group G01N 27/74.

In particular, group G01R 33/20 covers measuring magnetic variables/properties by using magnetic resonance, e.g. NMR, EPR or other spin effects, whereas investigating or analysing materials by using such spin effects is covered by group G01N 24/00.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Measuring electric variables or properties

Medical diagnosis by electric means, e.g. by measuring bioelectric currents or voltages, or the impedance of a part of the body	A61B 5/04, A61B 5/05, A61B 5/053

Monitoring electric consumption of electrically-propelled vehicles	B60L 3/00
Investigating non-electric or non-magnetic properties of materials by the use of electric means	G01N 27/00
Electric prospecting or detecting	G01V 3/00
Measuring atmospheric potential differences, e.g. due to electrical charges in clouds	G01W 1/16
Indicating correct tuning of resonant circuits	H03J 3/12

Measuring magnetic variables or properties

Medical diagnosis by magnetic means, e.g. involving ESR, NMR or MRI	A61B 5/05, A61B 5/055
Ascertaining earth's true or magnetic north for navigation or surveying purposes	G01C 17/00
Magnetic resonance gyrometers	G01C 19/60
Investigating or analysing materials by using NMR, EPR or other spin effects	G01N 24/00
Investigating non-electric or non-magnetic properties of materials by the use of magnetic means	G01N 27/74
Measuring direction or magnitude of the magnetic earth's field; Magnetic prospecting or detecting, e.g. well logging involving NMR	G01V 3/00

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Electrical testing characterised by what is being tested not provided for elsewhere (group G01R 31/00)

Electric testing of control systems	G05B 23/02
Testing computers during standby operation or idle time	G06F 11/22
Testing of switches in structural association with the switches themselves	H01H
Testing discharge tubes during manufacture	H01J 9/42
Testing or measuring semiconductors or solid state devices during manufacture or treatment	H01L 21/66
Accumulators with integrated arrangements for testing condition	H01M 10/48
Testing of A/D or D/A conversion	H03M 1/10
Testing line transmission systems	H04B 3/46
Testing arrangements of data switching networks	H04L 12/26
Testing arrangements of telephone substation equipments	H04M 1/24
Testing of television systems or details thereof	H04N 17/00
Testing arrangements of loudspeakers, microphones or similar electromechanical transducers	H04R 29/00
Testing lamps structurally associated with light source circuit arrangements for detecting lamp failure	H05B 37/03

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Measuring electric variables or properties

Electrotherapy	A61N 1/00
Measuring not specially adapted for a specific variable	G01D
Tariff metering apparatus	G01D 4/00
Measuring temperature based on the use of electric elements directly sensitive to heat	G01K 7/00
Systems for regulating electric variables	G05F 1/00-G05F 5/00
[i]*Image data processing or generation*	G06T
Monitoring of signal or alarm line circuits, e.g. signalling of line faults	G08B 29/06
Electric switches; Emergency protective devices	H01H
Cathode-ray tubes	H01J 31/00
Thermo-electric solid state devices	H01L 35/00, H01L 37/00
Emergency protective circuit arrangements	H02H
Circuit arrangements for charging, or depolarising batteries or for supplying loads from batteries	H02J 7/00
Methods or apparatus specially adapted for manufacturing, assembling, maintaining or repairing dynamo-electric machines	H02K 15/00
Generation of oscillations	H03B
Modulation	H03C
Frequency discriminators; Phase discriminators	H03D
Amplifiers	H03F
Impedance networks, e.g. resonant circuits; Resonators	H03H
Tuning resonant circuits; Selecting resonant circuits	H03J
Pulse technique	H03K
A/D or D/A conversion	H03M 1/00
Housings for electric apparatus	H05K
Screening of electric apparatus or components against electric fields	H05K 9/00
Arrangements for monitoring manufacture of assemblages of electric components	H05K 13/08

Measuring magnetic variables or properties

Magnetotherapy	A61N 5/00
Measuring not specially adapted for a specific variable	G01D
Measuring temperature based on the use of magnetic elements directly sensitive to heat	G01K 7/36
Systems for regulating magnetic variables	G05F 7/00
Image data processing or generation	G06T
Superconducting magnets	H01F 6/00

Magnets	H01F 7/00
Thermo-magnetic solid state devices	H01L 35/00, H01L 37/00
Devices using galvano-magnetic or similar magnetic effects, e.g. Hall effect	H01L 43/00
Aerials	H01Q
Screening of electric apparatus or components against magnetic fields	H05K 9/00

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

measuring properties	includes investigating properties
instruments or measuring instruments	means electro-mechanical measuring mechanisms
arrangements for measuring	means apparatus, circuits, or methods for measuring

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

EPR	electron paramagnetic resonance
ESR	electron spin resonance
NMR	nuclear magnetic resonance
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
MRS	magnetic resonance spectroscopy
NQR	nuclear quadrupole resonance

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

[i] It has been proposed (CA) to remove the informative references which appear in *Italics*

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
IPC Revision Working Group	
Topic: D179 – G01R	**Date: January 21, 2009**

US thanks the Rapporteur for Annex 9 and can agree with the latest proposal.

US is still unclear of the meaning for the Glossary term “measuring properties”. We are not sure what is meant by “includes”. Is the Glossary term meaning “investigate the value of the measured properties” or “this also includes investigating properties besides measuring”? US would appreciate clarification.

[end]

JAPAN PATENT OFFICE

February 26, 2009

Project: D179 Subclass: G01R

JP Comment

JP thanks EP Rapporteur for continuing efforts for this "quite difficult Definition." Having reviewed Rapporteur report and proposal in Annex 8 and 9, following points were noticed.

1. "Relationship between large subject matter areas" section

The first paragraph after the sub-heading of "Investigating magnetic variable or properties" reads; This subclass also covers, ……, whereas measuring or investigating non-magnetic properties of materials by the use of magnetic means is covered by group G01N 27/74. However, group G01N 27/74 is limited to "of fluids" by its title. This symbol should be corrected to G01N 27/72 which is titled as "by investigating magnetic variables."

2. "References relevant to classification in this subclass" section

2-1) There are following two entries among the listings after the sub-heading of "Measuring magnetic variables or properties."

Medical diagnosis by magnetic means, e.g. involving ESR, NMR or MRI	A61B 5/05, A61B 5/055
Investigating or analysing materials by using NMR, EPR or other spin effects	G01N 24/00

For the sake of consistency, it would be better to add ESR to the description of G01N 24/00, either by replacing EPR with ESR or by simply adding ESR after EPR.

2-2) At the end of the same listing, there is:

Investigating non-electric or non-magnetic properties of materials by the use of magnetic means	G01N 27/74

For the same reason as was stated in 1, above, this symbol must be G01N 27/72.

[END]

DEUTSCHES PATENT- UND MARKENAMT German Patent and Trade Mark Office	Class/Subcl.: **G01R** Date: 08.06.09
DE - Comments — D 179	

Re:

Sorry for our late Comment.

Our expert agrees with the the proposal in general but wants to be more precise with wording on **p.3** under "Measuring magnetic variables or properties" concerning the **A61B 5/055** reference.

A more exact description of the relevant technical background here might be: "medical diagnosis involving magnetic means, e.g. involving ESR, NMR or MRI".

The reason is on one hand, that A61B 5/055 comprises also medical processes (for diagnostic purpose) where ESR, NMR or MRI is playing but a concomitant role (e.g. emphasis on PET, ablation, chirurgical intervention etc.). On the other hand the wording should reflect the difficult delimination against ESR/NMR/MRI processes as such (G01R), shifting the stress on diagnosis (compare wording at A61B 5/05 and 5/055 in the IPC).

On **p.5** "measuring magnetic variables or properties" the reference concerning "Magnetotherapy" **A61N** should be **2/00** and not 5/00.

Klaus Wollny

IPC/D 180
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G01W**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
3	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	27.03.2008
4	Comments	Observations	CA	31.03.2008
5	Comments	Observations	US	09.07.2008
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	30.09.2008
7	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	30.09.2008
8	Comments	Observations	CA	30.09.2008
9	Comments	Observations	US	16.10.2008
10	French version	Version française	EP	16.02.2009
11	Proposal removal of non-limiting references	Proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs	EP	20.04.2009
12	Comments	Observations	US	07.05.2009
13	Comments	Observations	JP	25.05.2009

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D180**	Subject: **Meteorology**	IPC range: **G01W**
Rapporteur Report		30 September 2008

Ref.: Annexes 3-5 of project file

Comments were received on the initial proposal (annex 3) from CA and US.

CA (and US) objected that references to G01S for "radar, sonar or lidar systems designed for meteorological use" should be limiting, not informative.
R accepts CA and US remarks.

Furthermore, CA suggested to make clearer the borderline between G01W and the those subclasses of G01 covering the instruments for measuring single physical variables, e.g. temperature, pressure or wind speed.
R improved the situation by adding the following text under "Relationship between large subject matter areas":

> Instruments for measuring single physical variables, e.g. temperature, pressure or wind speed, should be classified in the appropriate subclasses of class G01, e.g. G01K, G01L or G01P, whereas G01W should be used for the classification of instruments specializing or <u>combining</u> those measurements for the purpose of deducing, indicating or forecasting weather conditions or meteorological information.

Finally, informative reference to B60S has been removed as it seems (see also CA comments) not directly related to G01W.

Last but not least, **R** notices that not a single occurrence of *catathermometer* (group 1/17) was found in EPODOC, nor in Wikipedia.
Is this an appropriate term in a classification scheme?

Roberto Iasevoli

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: **D180**
	Subclass: **G01W**
EPO Rapporteur Proposal	Date: 30-09-2008

G01W

Meteorology

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Measurement of certain ambient atmospheric conditions.
Adaptations of balloons, missiles, or aircrafts for meteorological purposes.
Radiosondes.
Devices for predicting weather conditions.
Weather houses or similar ornamental devices for indicating humidity.
Sunshine-duration recorders.
Rainfall or precipitation gauges.
Measuring atmospheric potential differences, e.g. due to electrical charges in clouds.
Catathermometers[1] for measuring "cooling value" related either to weather conditions or to comfort of other human environment.
Testing or calibrating meteorological apparatus.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

Instruments for measuring single physical variables, e.g. temperature, pressure or wind speed, should be classified in the appropriate subclasses of class G01, e.g. G01K, G01L or G01P, whereas G01W should be used for the classification of instruments specializing or combining those measurements for the purpose of deducing, indicating or forecasting weather conditions or meteorological information.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Radar, sonar, lidar or analogous systems, designed for meteorological use	G01S 13/95, G01S 15/88, G01S 17/95

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

[1] **R** notices that not a single occurrence of catathermometer was found in EPODOC, nor in Wikipedia. Is this an appropriate term in a classification scheme?

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Influencing weather conditions in horticulture, cultivation, forestry or watering	A01G 15/00
Heating, cooling or ventilating devices in vehicles	B60H 1/00
Balloons in general	B64B 1/40
Dispersing fog in general, e.g. on roads or on airfields	E01H 13/00
Self-propelled or guided missiles for carrying measuring instruments	F42B 15/08
Measuring volume	G01F
Measuring temperature	G01K
Measuring pressure	G01L 7/00-15/00
Measuring intensity of sunshine	G01J 5/00
Measuring humidity, e.g. hygrometers	G01N G01N 19/10
Measuring speed of fluids, e.g. wind speed	G01P 5/00
Indicating direction of fluid movement, e.g. by weather vane	G01P 13/02
Measuring potential differences	G01R 19/00, G01R 29/00
Alarms responsive to formation or anticipated formation of ice	G08B 19/02
Alarms responsive to calamitous events, e.g. tornados	G08B 21/10
Transmission systems for measured values	G08C

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

meteorology includes measurement of certain ambient atmospheric conditions

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

CAT Clear Air Turbulence

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

The Canadian Intellectual Property Office CIPO OPIC L'Office de la propriété intellectuelle du Canada

Project Number	**: D180**
Class/Subclass	**: G01W**
Date	**: September 30, 2008**

CA thanks the Rapporteur for the careful revision of the Definition of Subclass G01W, found in Annex 7. CA is willing to approve the Definition Project as laid out in Annex 7.

CA has noted the Rapporteur's observation, in both Annexes 6 and 7, pertaining to the term "catathermometer", used in the title of Subgroup G01W 1/17. CA agrees that this term is not widely used. The term is defined in some specialized dictionaries, but admits a variety of spellings:

- Katathermometer or catathermometer: a large-bulbed alcohol thermometer used to measure the cooling effect of particular atmospheric conditions or to measure moderate air velocities by means of the cooling effect. (*Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language*. P. 1234.)

- Kata thermometer: An alcohol thermometer used to measure low velocities in air circulation…being a measure of the air current in that location. (*McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Scientific and Technical Terms.* 4th Ed., P. 1023.)

Upon searching the Canadian database, CA reaches the same conclusion as the Rapporteur: since none of the three alternative spellings above are found in any of the Canadian patent documents, it does appear that other choices of words or expressions might be more helpful for classification purposes (especially in view of the operational definition of catathermometers).

Claude Plante
Senior Patent Classification Examiner

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
IPC Revision Working Group	
Topic: D180 – G01W	Date: 16 October 2008

US thanks the Rapporteur for RR and RP of annexes 6 and 7, respectively. US can agree to the RP of annex 7. Concerning the term “catathermometer” used in the title of Subgroup G01W 1/17, it may be best addressed in a maintenance project.

GT Révision CIB – Projet de définition	Projet : **D180**
	Sous-classe : **G01W**
Proposition du rapporteur OEB	Date: 15-02-2009

G01W

Météorologie

Enoncé de la définition

La présente sous-classe couvre :

Mesure de certaines conditions de l'atmosphère ambiante.
Adaptations de ballons, de fusées ou d'aéronefs à des fins météorologiques.
Radiosondes.
Dispositifs pour la prévision des conditions météorologiques.
Chalets hygrométriques ou dispositifs décoratifs similaires pour indiquer l'humidité.
Enregistreurs de durée de l'insolation.
Pluviomètres ou udomètres.
Mesures du gradient de potentiel électrique de l'atmosphère, p.ex. dû aux charges électriques dans les nuages.
Catathermomètres indiquant "le pouvoir refroidissant", en relation, soit avec les conditions météorologiques, soit avec l'ambiance d'un habitat humain.
Essai ou étalonnage des appareils météorologiques.

Liens entre secteurs d'une large portée

Les instruments destinés à mesurer les variables physiques prises isolément, p.ex. la température, la pression ou la vitesse du vent, doivent être classés dans les sous-classes appropriées de la classe G01, p.ex. G01K, G01L ou G01P, tandis que G01W doit être utilisée pour classer les instruments spécialisés dans ces mesures ou les combinant afin de déduire, indiquer ou prévoir des conditions ou des informations météorologiques.

Renvois influençant le classement dans la présente sous-classe

La présente sous-classe ne couvre pas :

Radars, sonars, lidars ou systèmes analogues, conçus pour la météorologie	G01S 13/95, G01S 15/88, G01S 17/95

Exemples d'endroits couvrant la matière de la présente sous-classe lorsque cette matière est spécialement adaptée à une application, utilisée à des fins particulières ou incorporée dans un système plus vaste:

Endroits par rapport auxquels la présente sous-classe est résiduaire :

Renvois indicatifs

Il est important de tenir compte des endroits suivants, qui peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche :

Agir sur les conditions atmosphériques dans l'horticulture, la culture, la sylviculture ou l'arrosage	A01G 15/00
Dispositifs de chauffage, de refroidissement ou de ventilation dans des véhicules	B60H 1/00
Ballons en général	B64B 1/40
Dispersion du brouillard en général, p.ex. sur routes ou aérodromes	E01H 13/00
Projectiles autopropulsés ou guidés pour le transport d'appareils de mesure	F42B 15/08
Mesure du volume	G01F
Mesure des températures	G01K
Mesure de la pression	G01L 7/00-15/00
Mesure de l'intensité du rayonnement solaire	G01J 5/00
Mesure de l'humidité, p.ex. hygromètres	G01N G01N 19/10
Mesure de la vitesse des fluides, p.ex. de la vitesse du vent	G01P 5/00
Indication de la direction de déplacement d'un fluide, p.ex. par une girouette	G01P 13/02
Mesure du gradient de potentiel électrique	G01R 19/00, G01R 29/00
Alarmes réagissant à la formation ou à la formation escomptée de la glace	G08B 19/02
Alarmes réagissant aux événements désastreux, p.ex. les tornades	G08B 21/10
Systèmes de transmission pour valeurs mesurées	G08C

Règles particulières de classement dans la présente sous-classe

AUCUNE.

Glossaire

Dans la présente sous-classe, les termes (ou expressions) suivants sont utilisés avec le sens ci-dessous indiqué :

météorologie	englobe la mesure de certaines conditions de l'atmosphère ambiante

Synonymes et mots-clés

Dans les documents de brevet, les abréviations suivantes sont souvent utilisées :

TAC	Turbulence en Atmosphère Claire

Dans les documents de brevet, les expressions (les mots) "---", "---" et "---" sont souvent utilisé(e)s comme synonymes.

Dans les documents de brevet, l'expression (le mot) "---" est souvent utilisé(e) à la place de "---" qui est employé dans le schéma de classification de la présente sous-classe.

Dans les documents de brevet, l'expression (le mot) "---" est souvent utilisé(e) au sens de "---".

ANNEX 11

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D180**	Subject: **Meteorology**	IPC Subclass: **G01W**
Proposal Removal Non-Limiting References		20 April 2009

Place	Reference to	Category	Proposed action	Comments
G01W	A01G 15/00	Informative (D)	Change into " Influencing weather conditions in horticulture, cultivation, forestry or watering" A01G 15/00; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01W	E01H 13/00	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01W	G01	Too vague (R); non relevant (D)	Remove from the scheme	
G01W	G01K	Informative (D)	Change into "Measuring temperature" G01K; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01W	G01L	Informative (D)	Change into "Measuring pressure" G01L 7/00-15/00; remove from the scheme; add to subclass definitions	
G01W	G01S 13/95	Limiting (D)	Keep in the scheme	
G01W	G01S 15/88	Limiting (D)	Keep in the scheme	
G01W	G01S 17/95	Limiting (D)	Keep in the scheme	
1/08	G08C	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme; add to group definitions	
1/08	H04B	Non relevant (D)	Remove from the scheme	
1/12	G01J	Informative (D)	Change into "Measuring intensity of sunshine" G01J 5/00; remove from the scheme; add to group definitions	
1/14	G01F	Informative (D)	Remove from the scheme; add to group definitions	
1/16	G01R	Informative (D)	Change into "Measuring potential differences in general" G01R 19/00, G01R 29/00; remove from the scheme; add to group definitions	

Roberto Iasevoli

ANNEX 12

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
IPC Revision Working Group	
Topic: D180	**Date: 7 May 2009**

US thanks the Rapporteur for Annex 11 and can agree with the placement of references cited. Additionally, US feels that G01J 5/48 may be considered limiting to G01W 1/12, if not, at least more specific to G01J.

JAPAN PATENT OFFICE

May 22, 2009

Project: D180 Subclass: G01W

JP Comment

JP thanks EP Rapporteur for “Proposal-removal of non-limiting references” in Annex 11. JP agrees with proposed replacement of references, but would wish to make two remarks.

1. It is noted that US commented on the following line in Annex 12;

1/12	G01J	Informative (D)	Change into "Measuring intensity of sunshine" G01J 5/00; remove from the scheme; add to group definitions	

by saying, “Additionally, US feels that G01J 5/48 may be considered limiting to G01W 1/12, if not, at least more specific to G01J.” We presume that US may be proposing to retain a reference to G01J 5/48 in the scheme, but JP considers that the proposed action as above would be justifiable because "Measuring intensity of sunshine" is related to the whole scope of G01J 5/- .

Additionally, though, JP would propose to add “G01J 1/00” as an informative reference in relation to the same G01W 1/12 because “Photometry” in general is also closely related to "Measuring intensity of sunshine". Thus, it is proposed to add the following line in the “Informative references” section of the group definitions.

Measuring intensity of sunshine	G01J 1/00, G01J 5/00

2. Upon having reviewed the listing of “Informative references” in the Definitions for G01W, JP came to believe that the addition therein of G01N 21/00 and G01N 27/00 should be quite useful for the search because G01W is closely related to the following arts covered by
G01N 21/00 and 27/00.

Meteorological measurement by the use of optical means (e.g. ombrometers, precipitation gauges, dew formation meters, measurement of clouds (including mists) by range meters, measurement of road surface condition, etc.)	G01N 21/00
Meteorological measurement by the use of electric means (e.g. hygrometers, ombrometers, precipitation gauges)	G01N 27/00

JP would wish that these two lines be add in “Informative references” section with or without “e.g.” in the parentheses.

[END]

IPC/D 181
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G08C**
RAPPORTEUR : **BR**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	BR	07.01.2008
2	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	24.04.2008
4	Comments	Observations	JP	30.04.2008
5	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	BR	06.06.2008
6	Comments	Observations	US	09.07.2008
7	Comments	Observations	JP	28.08.2008
8	Comments	Observations	EP	14.10.2008
9	Proposal	Proposition	BR	05.11.2008
10	Comments	Observations	JP	13.11.2008
11	Comments	Observations	GB	20.11.2008
12	Comments	Observations	DE	20.11.2008
13	Proposal	Proposition	BR	22.11.2008
14	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	BR	25.05.2009

IPC/D 181
Project: **D181 IPC Revision WG – Definition Project**
INPI - Brazilian Patent Office
Subclass: **G08C**
Rapporteur Proposal (ANNEX 13) Date : 22/11/2008

R. thanks JP, DE, GB comments about R. proposal (annex 9)

Definition statement

JP (annex 10) agrees with R. proposal.

GB (annex 11) and DE (annex 12) agrees with EP comments (annex 8):

"*details of transmission systems: multiplexing, electric wired, electric wireless, nonelectric (e.g. acoustic or optical)*"

instead of R. proposal

"*details of the transmission systems: multiplexing, wireless link, electric wired, non-electric e.g. acoustic, optical*".

The only difference here is that EP refers to electric wireless and R. proposal refers to wireless link. According to Glossary of Terms wireless is relating to a system of communication that doesn't use hardwired connections, so wireless link can be electric or not. We understand that using wireless link is clear that these links can be electrical or not. We changed the text to:

"*details of transmission systems: multiplexing, electric wired, wireless link, nonelectric (e.g. acoustic or optical)*".

Relationship between large subject matter areas

JP (annex 10) and DE (annex 12) agrees with R. proposal:

H04B covers the transmission of information-carrying signals, in general, the transmission being independent of the nature of the information. G08C refers to transmission systems specially adapted for measured values, control signals or the like. H04L covers transmission of signals having been supplied in digital form and includes telegraphic communication. The borderline between H04L and G08C lie on whether subject mater is digital transmission techniques per se (H04L) or the transmission system combined with measurement or control (G08C).

The point here to be stressed here G08C is that is not the information transmitted that must be specially adapted to measured values, control signals or the like, but that the transmission system that must be specially adapted to this. A transmitting system specially adapted for this

task (measured values, control signals or the like) must be classified at G08C. Following the same rule a transmission system combined or specially adapted with measurement or control should also be in G08C, if using network or transmitting directly from remote controller to an appliance.

R. proposes to keep this part as it is.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

JP (annex 10) agrees with R. proposal.

Informative references

JP (annex 10) agrees with R. proposal.

Removal of informative references

JP (annex 10) proposes that F15B, G01D5/00 and G05G in the subclass title and the references to G08C itself should be remain. DE (annex 12) agrees with JP.

R. agrees with JP. F15B, G01D5/00 and G05G at annex 9 are not informative references but limiting ones so they must be keep at scheme. The references to G08C also must be keep. The reference from G01G23/38 to G08C should be discussed in D174.

The new proposal is:

The reference to F15B, G01D5/00 and G05G in the subclass title and the references to G08C itself should be remain, the other ones should be removed from scheme.

Rapporteur submit the following new proposal:

****

Title – G08C

Transmission systems for measured values, control or similar signals

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

In the context of transmission systems for measured values, control signals or the like:

- processing signals, e.g. differentiating, delaying
- details of transmission systems: multiplexing, electric wired, wireless link, nonelectric (e.g. acoustic or optical)

- systems for transmitting the position of an object with respect to a predetermined reference
- system, e.g. tele-autographic systems
- monitoring, preventing or correcting errors

Relationship between large subject matter areas

H04B covers the transmission of information-carrying signals, in general, the transmission being independent of the nature of the information. G08C refers to transmission systems specially adapted for measured values, control signals or the like. H04L covers transmission of signals having been supplied in digital form and includes telegraphic communication. The borderline between H04L and G08C lie on whether subject mater is digital transmission techniques *per se* (H04L) or the transmission system combined with measurement or control (G08C).

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

fluid pressure transmission systems	F15B
mechanical means for transferring the output of a sensing member	G01D 5/00
mechanical control systems	G05G

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Devices for measuring tyre pressure or temperature, specially adapted for vehicles mounted on the wheel or tyre	B60C 23/04
Means for transmitting measuring-signals from a borehole or a well to the surface e.g. for logging while drilling	E21B 47/12
Transmitting seismic signals to recording or processing apparatus	G01V 1/22
Radiosondes for meteorological purposes	G01W 1/08
signalling or calling systems	G08B

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

NONE.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Measuring for diagnostic purposes	A61B 5/00
Remote-control arrangements specially adapted for toys, e.g. for toy vehicles	A63H 30/00
measuring arrangements giving results other than momentary value of variable	G01D
Indicating or recording devices, for measuring volume or volume flow, e.g. for remote indication	G01F
Devices or apparatus for measuring force, stress, torque, work, mechanical power, mechanical efficiency or fluid pressure	G01L

Arrangements for measuring electric or magnetic variables	G01R
Systems involving sampling of the variable controlled	G05B
position control in general	G05D
Input arrangements for transferring data to be processed into a form capable of being handled by the computer	G06F 3/00
Error detection; Monitoring on computers	G06F 11/00
methods or arrangements for graph-reading or for converting the pattern of mechanical parameters, e.g. force or presence, into electrical signals	G06K 11/00
Individual entry or exit registers	G07C 9/00
generating electric pulses	H03K
coding, decoding or code conversion, in general	H03M
Monitoring for transmission systems in general	H04B 17/00
Preventing or correcting errors in digital transmission systems	H04L 1/00
Monitoring for digital data switching networks	H04L 12/26
LAN networks, e.g. for home automation purposes	H04L 12/28
Metering arrangements for telephonic communication	H04M 15/00
special aspect of “selecting”, i.e. arrangements in telecontrol or telemetry systems for selectively calling a substation from a main station	H04Q 9/00
Controlling of electric light sources in general	H05B 37/02

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

transmission	*the dispatching, for reception elsewhere, of a signal, message, or other form of information*
tele-autographic system	*system which transmits the handwriting*
wireless	*relating to a system of communication that doesn’t use hardwired connections*

Synonyms and Keywords

NONE.

Removal of informative references in the scheme

The reference to F15B, G01D5/00 and G05G in the subclass title and the references to G08C itself should be remain, the other ones should be removed from scheme.

IPC/D 181
Project: **D181 IPC Revision WG – Definition Project**
INPI - Brazilian Patent Office
Subclass: **G08C**
Rapporteur Proposal (ANNEX 14) Date : 25/05/2009

Title – G08C

Transmission systems for measured values, control or similar signals

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

In the context of transmission systems for measured values, control signals or the like:

- ┌ processing signals, e.g. differentiating, delaying
- ┌ details of transmission systems: multiplexing, electric wired, wireless link, nonelectric (e.g. acoustic or optical)
- ┌ systems for transmitting the position of an object with respect to a predetermined reference
- system, e.g. tele-autographic systems
- ┌ monitoring, preventing or correcting errors

Relationship between large subject matter areas

H04B covers the transmission of information-carrying signals, in general, the transmission being independent of the nature of the information. G08C refers to transmission systems specially adapted for measured values, control signals or the like. H04L covers transmission of signals having been supplied in digital form and includes telegraphic communication. The borderline between H04L and G08C lie on whether subject mater is digital transmission techniques *per se* (H04L) or the transmission system combined with measurement or control (G08C).

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

fluid pressure transmission systems		F15B
mechanical means for transferring the output of a sensing member	G01D 5/00	
mechanical control systems		G05G

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Devices for measuring tyre pressure or temperature, specially adapted for vehicles mounted on the wheel or tyre	B60C 23/04
Means for transmitting measuring-signals from a borehole or a well to the surface e.g. for logging while drilling	E21B 47/12
Transmitting seismic signals to recording or processing apparatus	G01V 1/22
Radiosondes for meteorological purposes	G01W 1/08

signalling or calling systems G08B

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

NONE.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Measuring for diagnostic purposes A61B 5/00
Remote-control arrangements specially adapted for toys, e.g. for toy vehicles A63H 30/00
measuring arrangements giving results other than momentary value of variable G01D
Indicating or recording devices, for measuring volume or volume flow, e.g. for remote indication G01F
Devices or apparatus for measuring force, stress, torque, work, mechanical power, mechanical efficiency or fluid pressure G01L
Arrangements for measuring electric or magnetic variables G01R
Systems involving sampling of the variable controlled G05B
position control in general G05D
Input arrangements for transferring data to be processed into a form capable of being handled by the computer G06F 3/00
Error detection; Monitoring on computers G06F 11/00
methods or arrangements for graph-reading or for converting the pattern of mechanical parameters, e.g. force or presence, into electrical signals G06K 11/00
Individual entry or exit registers G07C 9/00
generating electric pulses H03K
coding, decoding or code conversion, in general H03M
Monitoring for transmission systems in general H04B 17/00
Preventing or correcting errors in digital transmission systems H04L 1/00
Monitoring for digital data switching networks H04L 12/26
LAN networks, e.g. for home automation purposes H04L 12/28
Metering arrangements for telephonic communication H04M 15/00
special aspect of “selecting”, i.e. arrangements in telecontrol or telemetry systems for selectively calling a substation from a main station H04Q 9/00
Controlling of electric light sources in general H05B 37/02

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

transmission *the dispatching, for reception elsewhere, of a signal, message, or other form of information*

tele-autographic system *system which transmits the handwriting*

wireless *relating to a system of communication that doesn’t use hardwired connections*

Synonyms and Keywords

NONE.

Removal of informative references in the scheme

The reference to F15B, G01D5/00 and G05G in the subclass title and the references to G08C itself should be remain, the other ones should be removed from scheme.

IPC/D 182
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 15.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G09B**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	24.04.2008
3	Comments	Observations	JP	09.06.2008
4	Comments	Observations	US	09.07.2008
5	Comments	Observations	JP	29.07.2008
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	06.01.2009
7	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	06.01.2009

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D182**	Subject:	IPC range: **G09B**
Rapporteur Report		06-01-2009

Ref.: Annexes 2-5 of project file

Comments were received by JPO (annexes 3,5) and USPTO (annex 4) on the initial proposal of annex 2.

R accepts all of JPO recommendations.

As to the USPTO ones,

- suggestion 1 is accepted;
- suggestion 2 is partly accepted: wording of section "Relationship ..." has been reviewed and subclasses of G06 are now explicitly quoted in the section "References relevant ...";
- suggestion 3 is also accepted in parts.

  For example **R** maintains that reference to A47B 97/02 for "Devices for holding or supporting maps" is informative with respect to the subject matter of maps.

  Anyway, motivated by this remark, **R** reviewed the list of Informative references, and tried to improve the ranking.

  The reference to Abacus and those relating to Simulators have been reconsidered as Limiting, while those relating to Models, have been moved to the section "References relevant to classification ..." // "... specially adapted ...".

The new **R** proposal takes into account the suggestions, the comments and the analysis as above.

Roberto Iasevoli

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: **D182**
	Subclass: **G09B**
EPO Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 06-01-2009

G09B

Educational or demonstration appliances; Appliances for teaching, or communicating with, the blind, deaf or mute; Models; Planetaria; Globes; Maps; Diagrams

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Apparatus or methods for educational or teaching purposes, e.g.:

- manually- or mechanically-operated educational appliances, e.g. working with questions and answers
- electrically-operated educational appliances, e.g. working with questions and answers
- teaching hand-writing, shorthand, drawing, or painting
- teaching typing, music, reading or any other subjects.

Simulators for teaching or training purposes.

- Simulators regarded as teaching or training devices, which is the case if they give perceptible sensations having a likeness to the sensations a student would experience in reality in response to actions taken by him.

Teaching, or communicating with, the blind, deaf or mute.

Models, e.g.:

- for scientific purposes, e.g. anatomical models
- models of buildings, installations, or the like
- full-sized devices for demonstration purposes.

Planetaria or globes; Maps; Plans; Charts; Diagrams, e.g. route diagrams.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

This subclass does not cover computer-based simulators, i.e. simulators which merely demonstrate or illustrate the function of an apparatus or of a system by means involving computing, and therefore cannot be regarded as teaching or training devices. Such computer-based simulators are covered by class G06, if no provision exists elsewhere.

This subclass does not cover components of simulators, if identical with real devices or machines, which are covered by the relevant subclasses for these devices or machines.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Simulators for teaching or training purposes

Simulating cosmonautic conditions, e.g. for conditioning crews	B64G 7/00
Teaching or practice apparatus for gun-aiming or gun-laying	F41G 3/26
Computer-based simulators	G06C - G06T
Analogue computers for flight simulators	G06G 7/72

Education or teaching in general

Abacus	G06C 1/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Models

Dental articulators	A61C 11/00
Models in the nature of toys, e.g. model railways	A63H
Models of scenic effects, e.g. trees or rocks, for stage purposes	A63J 13/00

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Digital computers	G06F
Image data processing or generation	G06T
Displaying in general	G09F

Education or teaching in general

Exercising apparatus for developing or strengthening the muscles or joints of the body	A63B 21/00, A63B 23/00
Puzzle-games	A63F 9/00
Talking dolls or toys	A63H 3/28
Devices for psychotechnics or testing reaction times, e.g. for vehicle drivers	A61B 5/16

Printed matter of special format or style not otherwise provided for	B42D 15/00
Articles for writing or drawing upon; Accessories or aids for writing or drawing	B43L
Metronomes	G04F 5/02
Hand-manipulated computing devices	G06G 1/00
Data processing specially adapted for human management, scheduling, allocating time	G06Q 10/00
Data processing specially adapted for user profile, evaluation or surveying	G06Q 30/00
Aids for music	G10G
Video conference systems	H04N 7/14

Simulators for teaching or training purposes

Devices for psychotechnics or testing reaction times, e.g. for vehicle drivers	A61B 5/16
Fire fighting accessories	A62C 39/00
Amusement arrangement creating illusion of travel	A63G 31/16
Games using electronically generated display	A63F 13/00

Teaching, or communicating with, the blind, deaf or mute

Devices or methods for replacing direct visual or auditory perception by another kind of perception	A61F 9/08 A61F 11/04
Typewriters for printing in Braille or with keyboards specially adapted for use by blind or disabled persons	B41J 3/32
Audible indication of meter readings	G01D 7/12
Clocks or watches for blind persons	G04B 25/02
Interface arrangements for digital computers	G06F 3/00
Reading or recognising printed or written characters	G06K 9/00
Tactile signalling systems	G08B 6/00
Speech analysis or synthesis; Speech recognition	G10L
Speech recognition using non-acoustical features, e.g. position of the lips	G10L 15/24
Telephone sets with features to facilitate their use, e.g. for blind people	H04M 1/247

Planetaria; Globes; Maps; Plans; Charts; Diagrams

Devices for holding or supporting maps	A47B 97/02
Map printing process	B41M 3/02
Printed matter of special format or style not otherwise provided for	B42D 15/00
Sheets temporarily attached together; Filing appliances	B42F
Structuring or formatting of map data specially adapted for navigation in a road network	G01C 21/32
Optical projection apparatus	G03B
Systems involving transmission of navigation instructions to the vehicle having a display in the form of a map	G08G 1/0969
Railway or like time or fare tables; Indicating or reading aids therefor	G09D 1/00

Display boards	G09F

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

IPC/D 183
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G09C**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	07.04.2008
3	Comments	Observations	US	14.07.2008
4	Comments	Observations	JP	29.07.2008

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: **D183**
	Subclass: **G09C**
EPO Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 27/05/2009

G09C

Ciphering or deciphering apparatus for cryptographic or other purposes involving the need for secrecy

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Apparatus or methods for ciphering or deciphering whereby a given sequence of signs (e.g. an intelligible text) is transformed into an unintelligible sequence of signs by transposing the signs or groups of signs or by replacing them by others according to a predetermined system.
Typewriters specially adapted for ciphering or deciphering cryptographic text.
Other apparatus or methods for ciphering or deciphering, e.g. involving the concealment or deformation of graphic data such as designs, written or printed messages.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Secret communication	H04K 1/00
Secret digital communication	H04L 9/00

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Typewriters characterised by the purpose for which they are constructed	B41J 3/00
Holographic processes	G03H
Marking record carriers	G06K 1/00-3/00
Recognizing patterns or reading or recognizing printed or written characters	G06K 9/00
General purpose image data processing	G06T 1/00
Information storage based on relative movement between record carrier and transducer	G11B
Coding, decoding or code conversion, in general	H03M
Pictorial communication	H04N

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

United States Patent and Trademark Office	
IPC Revision Working Group	
Topic: D183 – G09C	**Date: July 14th, 2008**

US thanks Rapporteur for their proposal of Annex 2. US can agree with the proposal in Annex 2.

[end]

Japan Patent Office

July 29, 2008

Project: D183 Subclass: G09C

JP thanks Rapporteur for their proposal of Annex 2. JP can agree with the proposal in Annex 2.

[end]

IPC/D 184
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G09D**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	29.04.2008
3	Comments	Observations	US	14.07.2008
4	Comments	Observations	JP	23.07.2008
5	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	06.01.2009
6	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	06.01.2009

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D184**	Subject:	IPC range: **G09D**
Rapporteur Report		06-01-2009

Ref.: Annexes 2-4 of project file

Comments were received by USPTO (annex 3) and JPO (annex 4) on the initial proposal of annex 2. DE remarked that they would approve if the comments of USPTO and JPO were included.

R accepts all of USPTO and JPO recommendations.

The new **R** proposal takes into account the suggestions, the comments and the analysis as above, and seems ready for approval.

Roberto Iasevoli

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: **D184**
	Subclass: **G09D**
EPO Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 27/05/2009

G09D

Railway or like time or fare tables; Perpetual calendars

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Railway tables or similar time/fare tables.
Indicating or reading aids for said tables.
Perpetual calendars.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

NONE.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Calendar blocks in printed format	B42D 5/04

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Indicating positions or identities of vehicles or vehicle trains	B61L 25/02
Clockwork-driven calendars	G04B
Railway or similar time/fare tables incorporating maps or route diagrams, e.g. railway routing charts	G09B 29/00
Display devices in general	G09F

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

IPC/D 185
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G09F**
RAPPORTEUR : **EP**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	EP	22.05.2008
3	Comments	Observations	US	14.07.2008
4	Comments	Observations	JP	22.08.2008
5	Comments	Observations	DE	15.09.2008
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	EP	07.01.2009
7	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	07.01.2009
8	Comments	Observations	JP	09.02.2009
9	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	EP	24.02.2009
10	Comments	Observations	FR	24.02.2009
11	Comments	Observations	JP	03.03.2009
12	Comments	Observations	DE	03.03.2009
13	Comments	Observations	JP	02.06.2009

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: **D185**
	Subclass: **G09F**
EPO Rapporteur Proposal	Date: 24-02-2009

G09F

Displaying;
Advertising;
Signs;
Labels or name-plates;
Seals

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Cardboard or like show-cards or foldable or flexible material (see Definition of group 1/00).
Labels, tag tickets, or similar identification or indication means, Seals; Postage or like stamps (see Definition of group 3/00).
Means for displaying samples (see Definition of group 5/00).
Signs, name or number plates, letters, numerals, or symbols; Panels or boards (see Definition of group 7/00).
Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the information is built-up on a support by selection or combination of individual elements (see Definition of group 9/00).
Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the complete information is permanently attached to a movable support which brings it to the display position (see Definition of group 11/00).
Illuminated signs; Luminous advertising (see Definition of group 13/00).
Boards, hoardings, pillars, or like structures for notices, placards, posters, or the like (see Definition of group 15/00).
Flags; Banners; Mountings therefor (see Definition of group 17/00).
Advertising or display means not otherwise provided for (see Definition of group 19/00).
Mobile visual advertising (see Definition of group 21/00).
Advertising on or in specific articles, e.g. ashtrays, letter boxes (see Definition of group 23/00).
Audible advertising (see Definition of group 25/00).
Combined visual and audible advertising or displaying, e.g. for public address (see Definition of group 27/00).

Relationship between large subject matter areas

NONE.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

sign	designates a mark or indication serving to make something recognisable, where the information presented is non-varying information, even if it is flashing; by way of example it covers advertising hoardings, or luminous, or light reflecting, safety arrangements

G09F 1/00

Cardboard or like show-cards of foldable or flexible material

Definition statement

This group covers:

Cardboard or similar show-cards of foldable or flexible material for information or advertising.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Printed matter of special format or style not otherwise provided for	B42D 15/00

G09F 3/00

Labels, tag tickets, or similar identification or indication means; Seals; Postage or like stamps

Definition statement

This group covers:

Labels, tag tickets, or similar identification or indication means.
Seals.
Postage or similar stamps.

References relevant to classification in this group

Examples of places where the subject matter of this group is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Tags attached to, or associated with, an object, in order to enable detection of the object	G01V 15/00
Labels specially adapted for being applied to, or incorporated in, record carriers and not intended for visual display simultaneously with the playing-back of the record carrier	G11B 23/38

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Horticulture; Cultivation of vegetables	A01G 1/00
Medals or badges	A44C 3/00
Identification of persons, e.g. finger-printing, foot-printing, impression techniques	A61B 5/117
Making paper labels	B31D 1/02
Layered products	B32B
Identity, credit, cheque or like information bearing cards in printed matter format	B42D 15/10
Sheets temporarily attached together	B42F
Fixing seals on documents	B43M 1/00
Apparatus or processes for labelling or tagging	B65C
Use of seals in packages	B65D 55/06
Labelling fabrics by sewing	D05B 3/20
Locks giving indication of unauthorised unlocking with destructible seal closures	E05B 39/02

G09F 5/00

Means for displaying samples

Definition statement

This group covers:

Means for displaying samples, e.g. portable cases, cards or books.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Showcases or show-cabinets with arrangements for continuously or intermittently moving the merchandise	A47F 3/08
Packages comprising articles attached to cards, sheets, or webs for removal therefrom	B65D 73/00

G09F 7/00

Signs, name or number plates, letters, numerals, or symbols; Panels or boards

Definition statement

This group covers:

Signs (see Glossary after G09F).
Panels or boards for presentation of non-varying information or advertising.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the complete information is built-up on a support by selection or combination of individual elements	G09F 9/00
Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the complete information is permanently attached to a movable support which brings it to the display position	G09F 11/00
Illuminated signs, board or panels	G09F 13/00
Boards, hoardings, pillars or the like for notices, placards, posters or the like	G09F 15/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this group is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Vehicle registration number plates	B60R 13/10

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Horticulture; Cultivation of vegetables	A01G 1/00
Upright bodies, e.g. marker posts or bollards; Supports for road signs	E01F 9/011
Joining sheets or plates to one another or to strips or bars parallel to them	F16B 5/00

G09F 9/00

Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the information is built-up on a support by selection or combination of individual elements

Definition statement

This group covers:

Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the information is built-up on a support by selection or combination of individual elements.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This group does not cover:

Abacus	G06C 1/00
Slide rules	G06G 1/00

Relationship between large subject matter areas

NONE.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Micro-structural devices comprising flexible or deformable elements, e.g. comprising elastic tongues or membranes	B81B 3/00
Light guides	G02B 6/00
Displays based on interference in an adjustable optical cavity	G02B 26/00
Displays based on the rotation of particles under the influence of an external field, e.g. gyricons, twisting ball displays	G02B 26/02
Displays using a reflecting micromechanical device, e.g. a MEMS mirror, DMD	G02B 26/08
Liquid crystal displays (LCD)	G02F 1/13
Electrochromic displays	G02F 1/15
Electrophoretic displays	G02F 1/167

Output arrangements for transferring data from digital processing unit to display device	G06F 3/14
Incandescent panels comprising a number of separate incandescent bodies	H01K 9/00
Cathode ray tubes	H01J 31/00
Plasma display panels	H01J 11/00 H01J 17/49
Semiconductor devices with at least one potential-jump barrier or surface barrier, specially adapted for light emission, e.g. LED	H01L 27/15 H01L 33/00
Organic light emitting devices, e.g. OLED displays or PLED displays	H01L 27/32 H01L 51/50
Pictorial communication, e.g. television	H04N
Electroluminescent light sources	H05B 33/00
Display consisting of a printed circuit board carrying a matrix of single LED	H05K 3/30

G09F 11/00

Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the complete information is permanently attached to a movable support which brings it to the display position

Definition statement

This group covers:

Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the complete information is permanently attached to a movable support which brings it to the display position, e.g. displaying by rotating drums, flexible sheets or endless belts.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Showcases or show-cabinets with arrangements for continuously or intermittently moving the merchandise	A47F 3/08

G09F 13/00

Illuminated signs;
Luminous advertising

Definition statement

This group covers:

Illuminated signs (see Glossary after G09F) boards or panels.
Luminous advertising, e.g. by fireworks.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the complete information is built-up on a support by selection or combination of individual elements	G09F 9/00
Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the complete information is permanently attached to a movable support which brings it to the display position	G09F 11/00
Mobile visual advertising	G09F 21/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Luminescent materials	C09K 11/00
Light sources using luminescence	F21K
Fireworks per se	F42B 4/00

Special rules of classification within this group

NONE.

G09F 17/00

Flags;
Banners;
Mountings therefor

Definition statement

This group covers:

Flags, banners or mountings therefor.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Flagpoles (as fixed construction)	E04H 12/32

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Devices specially adapted or mounted for storing and repeatedly paying-out and re-storing lengths of material	B65H 75/34

G09F 19/00

Miscellaneous advertising or display means not provided for elsewhere

Definition statement

This group covers:

Advertising or displaying not covered by the other groups of this subclass, e.g.

- incorporating moving display members, e.g. dolls, faces, or other representations of living forms with moving parts
- using special optical effects
- advertising or display means on roads, walls, or similar surfaces, e.g. illuminated

References relevant to classification in this group

Places in relation to which this group is residual:

Displaying or advertising in general	G09F 1/00-17/00, G09F 21/00 - 27/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Dolls or the like in the nature of toys	A63H
Special designs or pictures characterised by unusual light effects	B44F 1/00
Projection apparatus	G03B 21/00
Visible signalling systems using smoke, fire, or coloured gases	G08B 5/40

G09F 21/00

Mobile visual advertising

Definition statement

This group cover:

Advertising in mobile visual form, e.g.

- by carrying persons, animals or land vehicles
- by aeroplanes, airships, balloons or kites, e.g. sky-writing
- by ships or other floating means
- dispensing devices for pamphlets or similar advertising matter from vehicles

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Combined visual and audible advertising	G09F 27/00
Aircraft adaptations for dispensing devices for pamphlets or similar advertising matter from aircrafts	B64D 1/00
Aircraft adaptations for sky-writing	B64D 1/20

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Kites	B64C 31/06

G09F 23/00

Advertising on or in specific articles, e.g. ashtrays, letter-boxes

Definition statement

This group cover:

Advertising specially adapted for being placed on/in, or combined with, specific articles, e.g. tableware.

References relevant to classification in this group

These groups do not cover:

Advertising on or in vehicles, ships, aircrafts or the like, i.e. mobile visual advertising	G09F 21/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Containers, packaging-elements, or packages, with auxiliary means or provisions for displaying articles	B65D

G09F 25/00

Audible advertising

Definition statement

This group cover:

Advertising in audible form.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Combined visual and audible advertising	G09F 27/00
Public address systems	H04R 27/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Sound-recording or reproducing in general	G11B

G09F 27/00

Combined visual and audible advertising or displaying, e.g. for public address

Definition statement

This group covers:

Combinations of visual and audible advertising or displaying, e.g. for public address.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Mobile visual advertising	G09F 21/00
Audible advertising	G09F 25/00
Public address systems	H04R 27/00

INSTITUT NATIONAL DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INDUSTRIELLE FR – 24 février 2009

Projet IPC / **D185**
Sous-classe **G09F**
Réf : Annexe 9 (EP)

OBSERVATIONS

Nous avons quelques remarques relatives à ce projet.

- *Les renvois limitatifs et informatifs concernant la sous-classe G09F ne sont pas indiqués.*

- *Les renvois suivants peuvent présenter un intérêt pour la recherche.*

G09F3/00
G06K19/00 relatif aux étiquettes électroniques (Supports d'enregistrement avec une partie prévue pour supporter des marques numériques)

G09F13/00
G02F1/13357 relatif à l'éclairage des panneaux d'affichage à cristaux liquides.

- *Le groupe principal* ***G09F15/00***

La définition pour ce groupe a été omise.
Il concerne notamment les structures articulées modulaires.

JAPAN PATENT OFFICE

March 3, 2009

Project: D185 Subclass: G09F

JP Comment

JP thanks EP Rapporteur for the posting of revised proposal as Annex 9 of the project title for D185. JP is grateful that almost all points we discussed in Annex 4 and 8 were taken into consideration in the revised Definition, but would still like to raise one point.

With respect to the reference to G09F 9/00 and G09F 11/00 in the section of "References relevant to classification in this group" for G09F 7/00 and 13/00, JP proposed in previous comments to use the following descriptions.

Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the information is built-up on a support by selection or combination of individual elements	G09F 9/00
Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the complete information is permanently attached to a movable support which brings it to the display position	G09F11/00

Rapporteur adopted this JP proposal and we can see the same description as above in the column for G09F 11/00 in Annex 9. However, as for the column for G09F 9/00, Rapporteur put the following description in the revised proposal.

Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the complete information is built-up on a support by selection or combination of individual elements	G09F 9/00

It is the understanding of JP that the scope of G09F 9/00 in this part is not limited to “the complete information.” JP proposes to remove the term “complete” from the column for G09F 9/00 in the abovementioned two places.

DEUTSCHES PATENT- UND MARKENAMT German Patent and Trade Mark Office	Class/Subcl.: **G09F** Date:03.03.2009
DE - Comments — D 185	

Re: Annex 7

DE thanks the Rapporteur for the proposal in annex 7 and supports it with the following comments:

Our patent examiners for G09F suggest the following **extensions** (embedded in the annex 7 proposal and **brown** marked), which result from their long search and classification experience in the field:

G09F

Displaying;
Advertising;
Signs;
Labels or name-plates;
Seals

G09F 3/00

Labels, tag tickets, or similar identification or indication means; Seals;
Postage or like stamps

Definition statement

This group covers:

Labels, tag tickets, or similar identification or indication means.
Seals.
Postage or similar stamps.

References relevant to classification in this group

Examples of places where the subject matter of this group is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Tags attached to, or associated with, an object, in order to enable detection of the object	G01V 15/00
Labels specially adapted for being applied to, or incorporated in, record carriers and not intended for visual display simultaneously with the playing-back of the record carrier	G11B 23/38
Record carriers for use with machines and with at least a part designed to carry digital markings at least one kind of marking being used for authentication, e.g. of credit or identity cards	G06K 19/10
Insulated conductors or cables with distinguishing or length marks	H01B 7/36

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Horticulture; Cultivation of vegetables	A01G 1/00
Medals or badges	A44C 3/00
Identification of persons, e.g. finger-printing, foot-printing, impression techniques	A61B 5/117
Making paper labels	B31D 1/02
Layered products	B32B
Identity, credit, cheque or like information bearing cards in printed matter format	B42D 15/10
Sheets temporarily attached together	B42F
Fixing seals on documents	B43M 1/00
Apparatus or processes for labelling or tagging	B65C
Use of seals in packages	B65D 55/06
Labelling fabrics by sewing	D05B 3/20
Locks giving indication of unauthorised unlocking with destructible seal closures	E05B 39/02
Securities or banknotes as far as the design or protection against forgery is of importance	B44F 1/12
Tags attached to, or associated with, an object, in order to enable detection of the object	G01V 15/00
Record carriers for use with machines and with at least a part designed to carry digital markings with integrated circuit chips	G06K 19/07
Testing paper currency, securities, bonds, or similar valuable papers for genuineness	G07D 7/00
Visual features other than those contained in record tracks or represented by sprocket holes	G11B 23/38

G09F 5/00

Means for displaying samples

Definition statement

This group covers:

Means for displaying samples, e.g. portable cases, cards or books.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Showcases or show-cabinets with arrangements for continuously or intermittently moving the merchandise	A47F 3/08
Packages comprising articles attached to cards, sheets, or webs for removal therefrom	B65D 73/00

G09F 7/00

Signs, name or number plates, letters, numerals, or symbols; Panels or boards

Definition statement

This group covers:

Signs (see Glossary after G09F).
Panels or boards for presentation of non-varying information or advertising.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Indicating arrangements in which varying information is built-up on a steady support by selection or combination of individual elements	G09F 9/00
Indicating arrangements in which complete information is permanently attached to a movable support which brings it to the display position	G09F 11/00
Illuminated signs, board or panels	G09F 13/00
Boards, hoardings, pillars or the like for notices, placards, posters or the like	G09F 15/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this group is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Vehicle registration number plates	B60R 13/10

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Horticulture; Cultivation of vegetables	A01G 1/00
Upright bodies, e.g. marker posts or bollards; Supports for road signs	E01F 9/011

Joining sheets or plates to one another or to strips or bars parallel to them	F16B 5/00

G09F 9/00

Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the information is built-up on a support by selection or combination of individual elements

Definition statement

This group covers:

Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the information is built-up on a support by selection or combination of individual elements.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This group does not cover:

Abacus	G06C 1/00
Slide rules	G06G 1/00
Indicators provided on the vehicle or vehicle train for signalling purposes	B61L 15/00
with components specially adapted for light emission, e.g. flat-panel displays using organic light-emitting diodes	H01L 27/32
Head-up displays	G02B 27/01
Indicating elements; Illumination thereof	G12B 11/00
Structuring or formatting of map data	G01C 21/32
Arrangement or adaptations of instruments	B60K 35/00
Illuminated signs; Luminous advertising	G09F 13/00..
Display panels, e.g. with crossed electrodes	H01J 17/49
Control arrangements or circuits, of interest only in connection with visual indicators other than cathode-ray tubes	G09G 3/00..
Switches having rectilinearly-movable operating part or parts adapted for pushing or pulling in one direction only, e.g. push-button switch characterised by legends, e.g. Braille, liquid crystal displays, light emitting or optical elements	H01H 13/83

Relationship between large subject matter areas

NONE.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Micro-structural devices comprising flexible or deformable elements, e.g. comprising elastic tongues or membranes	B81B 3/00
Light guides	G02B 6/00
Displays based on interference in an adjustable optical cavity	G02B 26/00
Displays based on the rotation of particles under the influence of an external field, e.g. gyricons, twisting ball displays	G02B 26/02

Displays using a reflecting micromechanical device, e.g. a MEMS mirror, DMD	G02B 26/08
Liquid crystal displays (LCD)	G02F 1/13
Electrochromic displays	G02F 1/15
Electrophoretic displays	G02F 1/167
Output arrangements for transferring data from digital processing unit to display device	G06F 3/14
Incandescent panels comprising a number of separate incandescent bodies	H01K 9/00
Cathode ray tubes	H01J 31/00
Plasma display panels	H01J 11/00 H01J 17/49
Semiconductor devices with at least one potential-jump barrier or surface barrier, specially adapted for light emission, e.g. LED displays	H01L 27/15 H01L 33/00
Organic light emitting devices, e.g. PLED displays	H01L 27/32 H01L 51/50
Pictorial communication, e.g. television	H04N
Electroluminescent light sources	H05B 33/00
Display consisting of a printed circuit board carrying a matrix of single LEDs	H05K 3/30
Chord or note indicators, fixed or adjustable, for keyboards or fingerboards	G10G 1/02
for radio sets, television sets, telephones, or the like; Arrangement of controls thereof	B60R 11/02
Controlling a series of operations in washing machines, e.g. programme-control arrangements for washing and drying cycles	D06F 33/02
Details of garments: Trimmings; Ornaments	A41D 27/08
Distinguishing marks on switches, e.g. for indicating switch location in the dark; Adaptation of switches to receive distinguishing marks	H01H 9/18
Devices or arrangements for the control of the intensity, colour, phase, polarisation or direction of light arriving from an independent light source, e.g. switching, gating or modulating; Non-linear optics	G02F 1/00...
Input arrangements or combined input and output arrangements for interaction between user and computer	G06F 3/01
Holograms used as optical elements	G02B 5/32
Registration, licensing, or like devices	B60R 13/10
Arrangement of optical signalling or lighting devices, the mounting or supporting thereof or circuits therefor	B60Q 1/00
Other optical systems; Other optical apparatus for producing stereoscopic or other three-dimensional effects	G02B 27/22
Other supports for positioning apparatus or articles	F16M 13/00
Temperature control or indicating arrangements for Hand irons	D06F 75/26
Two dimensional (2D) image generation, e.g. from a description to a bit-mapped image	G06T 11/00

G09F 11/00

Indicating arrangements for variable information in which the complete information is permanently attached to a movable support which brings it to the display position, e.g. displaying by rotating drums, flexible sheets or endless belts.

Definition statement

This group covers:

Display arrangements in which the varying information is obtained by bringing a pre-constituted complete information to the display position by a moving support, e.g. displaying by rotating drums, flexible sheets or endless belts.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This group does not cover:

incorporating moving display members	G09F 19/02

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Showcases or show-cabinets with arrangements for continuously or intermittently moving the merchandise	A47F 3/08
Advertising or display means on roads, walls, or similar surfaces, e.g. illuminated	G09F 19/22

G09F 13/00

Illuminated signs; Luminous advertising

Definition statement

This group covers:

Illuminated signs (see Glossary after G09F) boards or panels.
Luminous advertising, e.g. by fireworks.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Indicating arrangements in which varying information is built-up on a steady support by selection or combination of individual elements	G09F 9/00
Indicating arrangements in which complete information is permanently attached to a movable support which brings it to the display position	G09F 11/00
Mobile visual advertising	G09F 21/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Luminescent materials	C09K 11/00
Light sources using luminescence	F21K
Fireworks per se	F42B 4/00

produced by transmitted light, e.g. transparencies, imitations of glass-paintings	B44F 1/06

Special rules of classification within this group

NONE.

G09F 17/00

Flags; Banners; Mountings therefor

Definition statement

This group covers:

Flags, banners or mountings therefor.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Flagpoles (as fixed construction)	E04H 12/32

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Devices specially adapted or mounted for storing and repeatedly paying-out and re-storing lengths of material	B65H 75/34

G09F 19/00

Miscellaneous advertising or display means not provided for elsewhere

Definition statement

This group covers:

Advertising or displaying not covered by the other groups of this subclass, e.g.

- incorporating moving display members, e.g. dolls, faces, or other representations of living forms with moving parts
- using special optical effects
- advertising or display means on roads, walls, or similar surfaces, e.g. illuminated

References relevant to classification in this group

Places in relation to which this group is residual:

Displaying or advertising in general	G09F 1/00-

	17/00, G09F 21/00 - 27/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Dolls or the like in the nature of toys	A63H
Special designs or pictures characterised by unusual light effects	B44F 1/00
Projection apparatus	G03B 21/00
Visible signalling systems using smoke, fire, or coloured gases	G08B 5/40

G09F 21/00

Mobile visual advertising

Definition statement

This group cover:

Advertising in mobile visual form, e.g.

- by carrying persons, animals or land vehicles
- by aeroplanes, airships, balloons or kites, e.g. sky-writing
- by ships or other floating means
- dispensing devices for pamphlets or similar advertising matter from vehicles

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Combined visual and audible advertising	G09F 27/00
Aircraft adaptations for dispensing devices for pamphlets or similar advertising matter from aircrafts	B64D 1/00
Aircraft adaptations for sky-writing	B64D 1/20

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Kites	B64C 31/06

G09F 23/00

Advertising on or in specific articles, e.g. ashtrays, letter-boxes

Definition statement

This group cover:

Advertising specially adapted for being placed on/in, or combined with, specific articles, e.g. tableware.

References relevant to classification in this group

These groups do not cover:

Advertising on or in vehicles, ships, aircrafts or the like, i.e. mobile visual advertising	G09F 21/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Containers, packaging-elements, or packages, with auxiliary means or provisions for displaying articles	B65D

G09F 25/00

Audible advertising

Definition statement

This group cover:

Advertising in audible form.

References relevant to classification in this group

This group does not cover:

Combined visual and audible advertising	G09F 27/00
Public address systems	H04R 27/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Sound-recording or reproducing in general	G11B

G09F 27/00

Combined visual and audible advertising or displaying, e.g. for public address

Definition statement

This group covers:

Combinations of visual and audible advertising or displaying, e.g. for public address.

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Mobile visual advertising	G09F 21/00
Audible advertising	G09F 25/00
Public address systems	H04R 27/00

JAPAN PATENT OFFICE

June 2, 2009

Project: D185 Subclass: G09F

JP Comment

Further to our previous comment in Annex 11 on the Rapporteur proposal in Annex 9, JP would like to present the following opinion which was roused by FR comment in Annex 10 and DE comment in Annex 12.

1. FR Comment in Annex 10

[Opinion and proposal]

FR raised a question on the fact that Rapporteur made no entry of Limiting reference nor of Informative reference in the proposed definition for G09F in Annex 9. JP agrees with Rapporteur and considers that none of these references are necessary in the subclass definition. On the other hand, JP would propose to add G09G with its subclass title as an Informative reference in the main group definition for G09F 9/00 and G09F 13/00 respectively.

Arrangements or circuits for control of indicating devices using static means to present variable information	G09G

[Explanation]

Among several references appearing after the current title of G09F, all but the one to G09G are moved to “Limiting references/Informative references” sections in the relevant main group definitions in Rapporteur's proposal. Therefore, it would not be needed to refer to such references in the subclass definition of G09F per se.

On the contrary, despite the fact that G09G is a classification relating to G09F 9/00 and 13/00, there is no mentioning to G09G in the proposed group definition for these main groups. Therefore, JP proposes as above. (Please refer to the current descriptions in connection with subclass G09G and main group G09F 13/00.)

2. DE Comment in Annex 12

JP reviewed with interest a number of new references that were proposed by DE.

2-1) G09F 3/00

[Opinion and proposal]

(1) DE proposal to add 2 entries in the listing of references from function- oriented place to application-oriented place

JP is unable to support this expansion. As concerns the reference to G06K 19/10, however, JP would propose to add the following one line of G06K 19/00 in "Informative references" section in the group definition for G09F 3/00.

Record carriers for use with machines and with at least a part designed to carry digital markings	G06K 19

(2) DE proposal to add 5 entries in the listing of Informative references

JP is unable to support this expansion. As concerns the reference to G06K 19/07, however, JP would propose to replace it with the one to G06K 19/00 as presented in (1), above.

[Explanation]

(1) The proposed groups of G06K 19/10 and H01B 7/36 are not classifications involving utilization or incorporation of labels, tags, etc. JP would not consider that the references thereto from G09F 3/00 are those from function-oriented place to application-oriented place. However, G06K 19/00 may well be added as an Informative reference for G09F 3/00 because record carriers to carry digital markings are technically in close relationship with labels, tags, etc. and should be of interest for the search.

(2) Among the 5 references in DE proposal for addition, as concerns B44F 1/12 and G07D 7/00 (covering valuable securities, bank notes, etc.), there are no close technical relationship with labels, tags, etc. JP cannot find reasonable ground to consider them of interest for the search. As concerns G01V 15/00 and G11B 23/38, they were already listed in Rapporteur's proposal in the category of function-to-application oriented place. There should be no need to repeat listing them as Informative references. As concerns G06K 19/07, it would be more appropriate to replace it with G06K 19/00, as above.

2-2) G09F 9/00

[Opinion and proposal]

(1) DE proposal to add 10 Limiting references

JP is unable to support this expansion. As concerns G02B 27/01, however, JP would propose to adopt it as an Informative reference. As concerns G09G 3/00, JP would propose to adopt G09G with its subclass title, instead of G09G 3/00, as an Informative reference. (Please refer to our proposal concerning Annex 10 in 1., above.)

(2) DE proposal to add 14 Informative references

JP agrees with the addition of the one to G02B 27/22 with the amended description as follows. JP is unable to support the addition of other 13 lines. Thus, JP would propose to add the following two lines in the "Informative references" section.

Head-up displays	G02B27/01
Other optical systems or other optical apparatus for producing stereoscopic or other three-dimensional effects	G02B27/22

[Explanation]

(1) JP cannot agree that D-projects create Limiting references that are not currently mentioned in the classification scheme for G09F of the IPC. D-projects should seek the clarification of definitions, but should not make new rules. To add new Limiting references to the IPC would mean to change the definition of the current IPC, which obviously exceeds the mandate of D-projects. (We have already remarked this point in Annex 4, 3(3-2).)

As concerns H01J 17/49, this group is in fact appearing after the title of G09F 9/313 in the current IPC. JP considers this is an Informative reference. It may be noted that Rapporteur has already listed this H01J 17/49 as an Informative reference in the group definition for G09F 9/00.

As concerns G09F 13/00, the current IPC treats G09F 9/00 as taking precedence to G09F 13/00. Therefore, this precedence reference must be listed in the definition of G09F 13/00, not in this G09F 9/00. It may be noted that Rapporteur has already listed G09F 9/00 as a Limiting reference in the group definition for G09F 13/00.

(2) JP cannot agree with undue augmentation of the number of Informative references. Excess of disorganized information would only make the access to the required information difficult. Entries of "Informative references" should be limited to those that are useful for the search by a large majority of offices.

Proposed references by DE contain those related to the use application of display apparatus. While display apparatus have numerous variations of use application, to pick up only a portion of them does not seem to be useful for the search in G09F 9/00. On the other hand, to list up all use applications in an exhaustive manner would make the number of references enormous and would make it extremely difficult to secure the access to the necessary information. JP would oppose taking either of such alternatives.

As concerns G02F 1/00, the addition thereof would not be needed because G02F 1/13, 1/15, 1/167 have already been listed as Informative references in Rapporteur's proposal.

As concerns G02B 5/32, JP would not find hologram to be specifically more useful than any other optical elements for the search in G09F 9/00.

JP considers that other places proposed by DE are irrelevant to G09F 9/00.

2-3) G09F 11/00

[Opinion and proposal]

(1) DE proposal to add G09F 19/02 as a Limiting reference for G09F 11/00

JP is unable to support this proposal.

(2) DE proposal to add G09F 19/22 as an Informative reference for G09F 11/00

JP is unable to support this proposal.

[Explanation]

(1) According to the Guidelines for Drafting Classification Definitions (IPC/CE/32/12), "Limiting references are needed when subject matter otherwise covered by the classification place is collected elsewhere." In the present case, although G09F 19/02 is a classification for those incorporating moving display members, it does not mean that moving display members must always or necessarily indicate variable messages. Apparatus containing moving display members but not showing variable messages can be easily envisaged. G09F 19/02 cannot be determined to be a classification that collected elsewhere variable message signs that should be covered by G09F 11/00. Thus, it is not appropriate to treat the reference from G09F 11/00 to G09F 19/02 as a Limiting reference.

(2) There are no close technical relevance between "Arrangements for variable information in which the complete information is permanently attached to a movable support which brings it to the display position (G09F 11/00)" and "Advertising or display means on roads, walls, or similar surfaces (G09F 19/22)." JP cannot find reasonable grounds for taking the latter of interest for the search in the former.

2-4) G09F 13/00

[Opinion and proposal]

(1) DE proposal to add B44F 1/06 as an Informative reference for G09F 13/00

Instead of B44F 1/06, JP would like to counter-propose to add B44F 1/00 with the following description.

Designs or pictures characterised by special or unusual light effects	B44F 1/00

[Explanation]

(1) JP believes that the whole of B44F 1/00 is useful for the search in G09F 13/00. There should be no need to limit the scope of reference to those "produced by transmitted light (B44F 1/06)."

[END]

IPC/D 187
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G21B**
RAPPORTEUR : **GB**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	GB	09.09.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	09.10.2008
4	Comments	Observations	US	03.12.2008
5	Comments	Observations	JP	16.12.2008
6	Comments	Observations	EP	30.01.2009
7	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	GB	01.04.2009
8	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	01.04.2009
9	Proposal removal of non-limiting references	Proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs	GB	04.06.2009

UK Intellectual Property Office	Rapporteur report
Definition project D187 **Subclass G21B**	Date: 1/4/09

GB Rapporteur is grateful to CA,US,JP and EP for the comments in Annexes 3-6.

References

CA suggests, with support from US,JP and EP, the inclusion the following informative reference:

Generating plasma; Handling plasma	H05H 1/00

Rapporteur agrees that this reference will serve as useful guidance.

Rapporteur also notes that the existing limiting reference to G21J could be clarified. Currently it reads 'Uncontrolled fusion reactors; applications thereof'. However, the G21J subclass title reads 'Nuclear explosives; applications thereof' whilst the note under this title states that the subclass covers 'uncontrollable fission or fusion reactions.' The G21J definition statement also refers to 'uncontrollable fission or fusion reactions.' This reference would therefore appear more accurate if worded as follows:

Uncontrollable fusion reactions; applications thereof	G21J

The above amendments have been incorporated into the proposal of Annex 8.

Jeremy Cowen

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: D187
	Subclass: G21B
GB Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 27/05/2009

Title – G21B

Fusion reactors

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Reactors in which energy release is caused by the controlled fusion of atomic nuclei, namely:

- Thermonuclear fusion reactors.
- Low-temperature nuclear fusion reactors, e.g. alleged cold fusion reactors.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

NONE.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Uncontrollable fusion reactions; applications thereof	G21J

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Controlled fission reactors	G21C
Generating plasma; Handling plasma	H05H 1/00

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms are used with the meaning indicated:

Confinement	Controlled compression of fusion nuclei to overcome their electrostatic repulsion.
Fusion	Combination of two or more nuclei to form a heavier nucleus, a by-product of which is the release of energy.
Thermonuclear	Relating to fusion at high temperatures.

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---".

UK Intellectual Property Office	GB proposal
Definition project D187 **Subclass G21B**	Date: 4th June 2009

Removal of informative references

Only one reference exists in G21B, in the subclass title. For the avoidance of doubt, this is a limiting reference and should therefore remain in the scheme.

However, Rapporteur suggests this reference be clarified as proposed in annex 7 to:

Uncontrollable fusion reactions; applications thereof	G21J

Jeremy Cowen

IPC/D 188
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 11.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G21C**
RAPPORTEUR : **GB**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	GB	09.09.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	15.10.2008
4	Comments	Observations	US	03.12.2008
5	Comments	Observations	JP	16.12.2008
6	Comments	Observations	EP	30.01.2009
7	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	GB	16.04.2009
8	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	16.04.2009
9	Proposal removal of non-limiting references	Proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs	GB	19.05.2009
10	Comments	Observations	JP	28.05.2009
11	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	GB	09.06.2009
12	Proposal removal of non-limiting references	Proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs	GB	09.06.2009

UK Intellectual Property Office	Rapporteur report
Definition project D188 **Subclass G21C**	Date: 15/4/09

GB Rapporteur is grateful to CA,US,JP and EP for the helpful comments in Annexes 3-6.

Definition statement

1. JP argues that the definition statement would be improved if it mirrored the main group titles. Rapporteur's intent was to provide a more concise statement, however agrees that accuracy of the statement is of overriding importance. Accordingly, JP's alternative has been incorporated into the new proposal, with a minor amendment to the first line to clarify that G21C relates to nuclear fission reactors, as fusion reactors are covered by G21B.

References

2. CA (with support from JP) suggests refinement of the informative reference to G06G 7/00 ('Analogue computers for nuclear reactors' in the initial proposal) to subgroup 7/54 as this is specific to analogue computers for nuclear physics, e.g. nuclear reactors, radioactive fallout. Rapporteur agrees that this is a more accurate reference. EP suggests that the wording of this revised reference should match that used in definition project D189. The amended reference is proposed as follows:

Electric or magnetic analogue computers, e.g. simulators, for nuclear physics	G06G 7/54

3. CA also suggests (with support from US and JP) additional informative references to F28G ('Cleaning of internal or external surfaces of heat-exchange or heat-transfer conduits, e.g. water tubes of boilers) and B08B 9/02 ('Cleaning pipes or tubes or systems of pipes or tubes') as relevant to subgroup G21C 17/017. Rapporteur agrees that these informative references are helpful, and proposes to incorporate them as follows:

Cleaning pipes or tubes using methods or apparatus specially adapted thereto	B08B 9/02
Cleaning of internal or external surfaces of heat-exchange or heat-transfer conduits, e.g. water tubes of boilers	F28G

4. CA observes that the informative reference (pumping coolant G21D) in subgroup G21C 19/28 could give rise to confusion with G21C 15/25 (Promoting flow of liquid coolants using jet pumps). Firstly, Rapporteur observes that this particular reference will be removed from the scheme under the ongoing removal of informative references. Furthermore, Rapporteur notes that G21C 15/24 and lower groups relate specifically to promoting coolant flow 'within the pressure vessel containing the core', whilst G21D, notably G21D 1/04, relates to more general pumping arrangements. Rapporteur feels that the limiting reference in G21D 1/04 back to G21C 15/24 ought to be sufficient to guide the user to the most appropriate place. Nevertheless, for the avoidance of doubt, R suggests that the reference to G21D is reworded to 'Pumping arrangements for reactor coolant not otherwise covered by G21C 15/24'. This ought to explicitly clarify the distinction between G21D and G21C 15/24.

5. US suggests inclusion of informative references to F16F (concerning G21C 7/20), F16L (concerning G21C 15/22) and B25J (concerning G21C 7/06). Rapporteur agrees with the first two of these, but is unclear about the relevance of B25J (Manipulators; Chambers provided within manipulation devices) to G21C 7/06 (Control of nuclear reaction by application of neutron-absorbing material). It is, however, noted that the scheme currently contains an informative reference to B25J in G21C 19/10 (Lifting or pulling devices within the reactor for co-operation with fuel elements or control elements). Therefore, an informative reference to Manipulators B25J has been incorporated into the new proposal.

6. JP suggests alteration of the reference to B01J 3/00 to more closely reflect the title of that group (ie Processes of utilising sub-atmospheric or super-atmospheric pressure to effect chemical or physical change of matter). Rapporteur acknowledges that the current definition reference is misleading yet feels that the proposed alternative does not provide a clear link from the group of origin (G21C 13/00). The following compromise may provide an optimum solution:

Pressure or containment vessels utilizing sub- or super-atmospheric pressure to effect chemical or physical change of matter	B01J 3/00

A proposal for the removal of informative references from G21C will follow.

Jeremy Cowen

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project	Project: D188
	Subclass: G21C
GB Rapporteur Proposal	Date : 27/05/2009

Title – G21C

Nuclear reactors

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

- Nuclear fission reactors
- Reactor fuel elements or their assemblies; Selection of substances for use as reactor fuel elements
- Moderator or core structure**;** Selection of materials for use as moderator
- Control of nuclear reaction
- Emergency protection arrangements structurally associated with the reactor
- Shielding structurally associated with the reactor
- Pressure vessels**;** Containment vessels**;** Containment in general
- Cooling arrangements within the pressure vessel containing the core**;** Selection of specific coolants
- Monitoring**;** Testing
- Arrangements for treating, for handling, or for facilitating the handling of, fuel or other materials which are used within the reactor, e.g. within its pressure vessel
- Apparatus or processes specially adapted to the manufacture of reactors or parts thereof
- Adaptations of reactors to facilitate experimentation or irradiation

Relationship between large subject matter areas

NONE.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Fusion reactors; hybrid fission-fusion reactors	G21B
Nuclear explosives	G21J

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Nuclear power plant	G21D
Control of nuclear power plant	G21D 3/00
Production of electric energy from fusion or fission reactions	G21D 7/00

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Pressure or containment vessels utilizing sub- or super-atmospheric pressure to effect chemical or physical change of matter	B01J 3/00
Cleaning pipes or tubes using methods or apparatus specially adapted thereto	B08B 9/02
Manipulators	B25J
Pressure vessels in general	F16J 12/00
Shock-absorbers in general	F16F
Tube joints in general	F16L
Cleaning of internal or external surfaces of heat-exchange or heat-transfer conduits, e.g. water tubes of boilers	F28G
Measurement of nuclear radiation	G01T
Electric or magnetic analogue computers, e.g. simulators, for nuclear physics	G06G 7/54
Pumping arrangements for reactor coolant not otherwise covered by G21C 15/24	G21D
Shielded cells or rooms	G21F 7/00

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

Core	The central region of a reactor containing fuel and moderator elements, where nuclear fission occurs.
Moderator	Material used in a thermal nuclear reactor to reduce the

	velocity of neutrons produced by nuclear fission in order to facilitate chain reaction.
Shield	Means surrounding a reactor to prevent radiation damage to operators etc.

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

UK Intellectual Property Office	Rapporteur report
Definition project D188 **Subclass G21C**	Date: 9th June 2009

Rapporteur is grateful to JP for comments in Annex 10 identifying discrepancies between the definition (annex 8) and informative reference proposal (annex 9), and for further identifying unconsidered references.

1. **Discrepancy between definition and informative reference proposals**

R agrees that the limiting references identified in groups G21C 19/303,19/307 and 19/32 should be added to the section of the definition entitled 'This subclass does not cover'.

Furthermore, R agrees that the informative references identified in groups G21C 11/02,13/06,15/24,15/28 and 21/00 should be added to the section of the definition entitled 'Informative references'

2. **References not listed in definition or informative reference proposals**

JP identified several references that were apparently overseen in annexes, namely. These are listed below with the suggested actions.

Ref place	Ref to	Category	Action	JP ref
G21C 7/12	G21C 9/02	Limiting	None	a.
G21C 15/16	B01D	Informative	Remove to group definition	b. (1)
"	F16T	Informative	Remove to group definition	b. (2)
G21C 17/00	G01	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	c.

R agrees that references b1,b2,c are certainly informative, whilst reference a. would appear to be limiting in nature.

R also considers the reference in G21C 7/12 to be unclear as the type of rod is unspecified. However, inspection of documents classified in G21C 9/02 confirms that the control rods may be dropped into the core to control reactivity. Accordingly, it is suggested that this limiting reference be clarified as follows:

Dropping control rods into the reactor core in an emergency G21C 9/02

Annex 12 is an amended proposal for the removal of informative references in view of the above. It is understood that the IB will incorporate agreed changes to the definition proposal.

Jeremy Cowen

UK Intellectual Property Office	GB Rapporteur proposal
Definition project D188 **Subclass G21C**	Date: 9th June 2009

Removal of references to application places

Following JP's comments in Annex 9, the proposal for removal of informative references has been amended as highlighted. It is understood that the IB will incorporate agreed changes to the definition proposal.

Ref place	Ref to	Category	Action	Comments
G21C title	G06G 7/54	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	
G21C title	G21B	Limiting	Retain in scheme	
G21C title	G21J	Limiting	Retain in scheme	
G21C 3/18	G21C 3/20	Limiting	Retain in scheme	
G21C 3/33	G21C 3/34	Limiting	Retain in scheme	
G21C 3/336	G21C 3/34	Limiting	Retain in scheme	
G21C 3/40	G21C 17/10	Informative	Remove to group definition	Clarify reference to 'Structural combination of fuel element with instruments for temperature measurement'
G21C 7/02	G21C 7/32	Limiting	Retain in scheme	
G21C 7/04	G21C 3/326	Informative	Remove to group definition	
G21C 7/12	G21C 9/02	Limiting	Retain in scheme	Clarify reference to 'Dropping control rods into the reactor core in an emergency'
G21C 7/20	F16F	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	
G21C 9/00	G21C 15/18	Limiting	Retain in scheme	
G21C 11/02	G21F	Informative	Remove to group definition	Clarify reference to read 'Shielding in general'
G21C 13/00	B01J 3/00	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	Clarify reference to 'Containment for chemical or physical processes'
G21C 13/00	F16J 12/00	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	
G21C 13/06	F16J 13/00	Informative	Remove to group definition	Clarify reference to 'Seals for pressure vessels in general'
G21C 15/16	B01D	Informative	Remove to group definition	
G21C 15/16	F16T	Informative	Remove to group definition	
G21C 15/24	H02K 44/02	Informative	Remove to subclass definition*	* Is this reference helpful?
G21C 15/28	G21C 5/12	Limiting	Retain in scheme	
G21C 15/28	C09K 5/00	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	
G21C 17/00	G01	Informative	Remove to	

			subclass definition	
G21C 17/06	G21C 17/04	Limiting	Retain in scheme	
G21C 19/10	B25J	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	
G21C 19/28	G21D	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	
G21C 19/303	G21F 9/02	Limiting	Retain in scheme	Include under 'This subclass does not cover'
G21C 19/307	G21F 9/04	Limiting	Retain in scheme	Include under 'This subclass does not cover'
G21C 19/32	G21F 9/00	Limiting	Retain in scheme	Include under 'This subclass does not cover'
G21C 19/34	G21F 7/00	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	
G21C 21/00	B23	Informative	Remove to subclass definition	

Jeremy Cowen

IPC/D 189
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G21D**
RAPPORTEUR : **GB**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	**CONTENT/CONTENU**		**ORIGIN/ ORIGINE**	**DATE**
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	09.09.2008
3	Comments	Observations	US	03.12.2008
4	Comments	Observations	JP	16.12.2008
5	Comments	Observations	EP	30.01.2009
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	GB	26.03.2009
7	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	21.05.2009

UK Intellectual Property Office	**Rapporteur Report**
Definition Project D189 **Subclass G21D**	Date: 26th March 2009

1. The Rapporteur thanks CA, US, JP and EP for their remarks and comments.

2. The Rapporteur has considered the US comment that G06G 7/54 should be a limiting reference. However, R agrees with EP and JP that this is an informative reference.

In this regard, the Rapporteur thanks JP for its helpful reference to project file D078.

3. In view of comments received on project file D190, the Rapporteur now takes the view that references should point to the most appropriate place(s) in the scheme, irrespective of whether these places were formerly marked as core or advanced level.

Thus, in the section headed 'This subclass does not cover', R proposes to retain the references to G21C 15/24 and G21C 3/40, but to remove the references to G21C 3/00 and G21C 15/00. Similarly, under 'Informative references', R proposes to retain the reference to H02K 44/02, but to remove the reference to H02K 44/00.

4. If no further comments are received, the Rapporteur will shortly produce an amended proposal based on the above.

Bill Riggs

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project GB Rapporteur Proposal	Project: D189 Class/subclass: G21D Date : 27/05/2009

Title – G21D
Nuclear power plant

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Details of nuclear power plant
Control of nuclear power plant
Arrangements of reactor and engine in which reactor-produced heat is converted into mechanical energy
Arrangements for direct production of electrical energy from fusion or fission reactions
Arrangements to provide heat for purposes other than conversion into electrical energy, e.g. for heating buildings

Relationship between large subject matter areas

None

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Structural combination of fuel element with thermoelectric element	G21C 3/40
Control of nuclear reaction in general	G21C 7/00
Emergency protection arrangements structurally associated with a reactor; for rapid reduction of reactivity under fault conditions; for suppressing fires	G21C 9/00, G21C 9/02, G21C 9/04
Pumping arrangements for the coolant by means within the reactor pressure vessel	G21C 15/24
Obtaining electrical energy from radioactive sources	G21H 1/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

None

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

None

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Electric or magnetic analogue computers, e.g. simulators, for nuclear physics	G06G 7/54
Thermoelectric elements per se	H01L 35/00, H01L 37/00
Electrodynamic pumps	H02K 44/02

Special rules of classification within this subclass

None.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

None

Synonyms and Keywords

engine		plant, such as a turbine
engine demand	load	

IPC/D 190
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 05.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G21F**
RAPPORTEUR : **GB**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	10.09.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	09.10.2008
4	Comments	Observations	US	03.12.2008
5	Comments	Observations	JP	19.01.2009
6	Comments	Observations	EP	06.03.2009
7	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	GB	26.03.2009
8	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	21.05.2009
9	Comments	Observations	JP	26.05.2009
10	Comments	Observations	CA	28.05.2009
11	Comments	Observations	US	01.06.2009
12	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	GB	04.06.2009
13	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	04.06.2009

UK Intellectual Property Office	**Rapporteur Report**
Definition Project D190 **Subclass G21F**	Date: 4th June 2009

1. The Rapporteur thanks JP, CA and US for their comments in annexes 9, 10 & 11.

2. R accepts JP comments.

3. R thanks CA for pointing out a possible problem when a limiting reference points to a place in the scheme that cannot be used as a first symbol. (In this case A61Q, which can only be applied when there is already a mark in A61K.)

However, simply moving the reference to A61Q to the Informative references part would leave just A61K 8/00 'Cosmetics or similar toilet preparations'. Clearly, by itself, this is not a limiting reference for G21F; it is only relevant to classification in G21F when the preparation is used as a barrier to radiation and so is also classified in A61Q.

R thus proposes to acknowledge the concerns raised by CA (and US) by qualifying the reference to A61Q with suitable text taken from the scheme, but then retaining the reference as a limiting reference.

Thus:

> Use of cosmetics or similar toilet preparations already classified as such in A61K 8/00, when brought into direct contact with the skin (i.e. topical preparations) for affording protection against X-rays or other harmful rays A61Q 17/04

4. R accepts CA's second point.

5. The Rapporteur has produced a fresh proposal based on the above.

Bill Riggs

PC Revision WG – Definition Project GB Rapporteur Proposal	Project: D190 Class/subclass: G21F Date : 05/06/2009

Title – G21F
Protection against X-radiation, gamma radiation, corpuscular radiation or particle bombardment; Treating radioactively contaminated material; Decontamination arrangements therefor.

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Shielding or protecting against high-energy radiation, including:
Shielding characterised by the composition of the material
Shielding characterised by its physical form, e.g. granules, or shape of the material
Transportable or portable shielded containers
Shielded cells or rooms
Treating radioactively contaminated material; decontamination arrangements therefor

Relationship between large subject matter areas

None

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Use of cosmetics or similar toilet preparations already classified as such in A61K 8/00 when brought into direct contact with the skin (i.e. topical preparations) for affording protection against X-rays or other harmful rays	A61Q 17/04
X-ray producing apparatus involving X-ray tubes; constructional details thereof; control thereof; circuits therefor	H05G 1/00, H05G 1/02, H05G 1/30
Apparatus or processes for producing X-rays, not involving X-ray tubes, e.g. involving generation of a plasma	H05G 2/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Apparatus for radiation diagnosis, e.g. combined with radiation therapy equipment; application or adaptation of safety means therefor	A61B 6/10
Applying radioactive material to the body; shielding of fluid reservoirs therefor, e.g. syringe shielding	A61M 36/08
Radiation protection in cosmonautical vehicles	B64G 1/54
Shielding structurally associated with a reactor	G21C 11/00

Vessels, containers or shields associated with X-ray tubes	H01J 35/16

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

None

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Protective clothing or garments in general	A41D 13/00
Applying radioactive material to, or placing it within, the body	A61M 36/00
Separation of different isotopes of the same chemical element	B01D 59/00
Safety devices combined with or specially adapted for manipulators	B25J 19/00
Chambers provided with manipulation devices; glove boxes	B25J 21/00 B25J 21/02
X-ray technique in general	H05G

Special rules of classification within this subclass

None.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

None.

Synonyms and Keywords

None.

IPC/D 191
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 08.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G21H**
RAPPORTEUR : **GB**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	10.09.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	31.10.2008
4	Comments	Observations	US	03.12.2008
5	Comments	Observations	JP	19.01.2009
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	GB	27.03.2009
7	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	21.05.2009
8	Comments	Observations	CA	28.05.2009
9	Comments	Observations	US	02.06.2009
10	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	GB	05.06.2009
11	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	05.06.2009

UK Intellectual Property Office	**Rapporteur Report**
Definition Project D191 **Subclass G21H**	Date: 5th June 2009

1. The Rapporteur thanks CA and US for their comments (annexes 8 & 9).

2. R thanks CA for their correction (first point).

3. Regarding the second point raised by CA, R agrees with US that the words 'not involving radiation' should simply be deleted.

In this regard, R notes that, from A23C 3/07, A23C 13/08, A23C 15/18 and A23C 19/097, only A23C 3/07 refers to preservation 'by irradiation'. A quick search in these areas reveals that the term 'irradiation' is used most frequently to refer to irradiation with non-ionising radiation such as rf, microwave, thermal or ultraviolet radiation. However, a very small number of documents disclosing the use of radiation from radioactive sources are classified in these areas. Although perhaps borderline, it thus appears appropriate within G21H to retain the limiting reference to A23C 3/07 and the informative references to A23C 13/08, A23C 15/18 and A23C 19/097.

R would welcome any further comments on this.

4. The Rapporteur has produced a fresh proposal based on the above.

Bill Riggs

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project GB Rapporteur Proposal	Project: D191 Class/subclass: G21H Date : 08/06/2009

Title – G21H
Obtaining energy from radioactive sources; Applications of radiation from radioactive sources; Utilising cosmic radiation.

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Arrangements for obtaining electrical energy from radioactive sources, e.g. from radioactive isotopes
Arrangements for direct conversion of radiation energy from radioactive sources into forms of energy other than electrical energy
Applications of radiation from radioactive sources or arrangements therefor
Use of effects of cosmic radiation

Relationship between large subject matter areas

None

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Measurement of nuclear or X-radiation	G01T
Fusion reactors	G21B
Nuclear reactors	G21C
Techniques for handling particles or electromagnetic radiation not otherwise provided for; irradiation devices, gamma- or X-ray microscopes	G21K
Electric discharge tubes or discharge lamps	H01J
Apparatus for generating ions to be introduced into non-enclosed gasses, e.g. into the atmosphere	H01T 23/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Use of radiation to produce mutation in plants	A01H 1/06
Preservation of meat, sausages, fish, eggs, fruit, vegetables or edible seeds by irradiation without heating effect	A23B 4/015 A23B 5/015 A23B 7/015 A23B 9/06
Preservation of milk or milk preparations by irradiation	A23C 3/07

Preservation of non-alcoholic beverages or foodstuffs by irradiation without heating	A23L 2/50 A23L 3/26
Medicinal preparations obtained by treating materials with wave energy or particle radiation	A61K 41/00
Methods or apparatus using radiation for disinfecting or sterilising materials or objects other than foodstuffs or contact lenses	A61L 2/08
Radiation therapy; therapy using X-rays, gamma rays or particle-irradiation	A61N 5/00 A61N 5/10
Applying radioactive material to the body	A61M 36/00
Direct application of radiation to physical, chemical or physico-chemical processes in general	B01J 19/08
Use or radiation for separating dispersed particles from gases or vapour, e.g. air	B03C 3/38
Use of radiation for pre-treatment of surfaces to which liquids or other fluent materials are to be applied, or after-treatment of applied coatings	B05D 3/06
Use of radiation in the working of plastics; after-treatment of articles without altering their shape; apparatus therefor	B29C 71/04
Railway trackside devices actuated by radiation and controlled by interaction with a vehicle or train	B61L 1/10
Railway trackside devices using radiation to control devices on a vehicle or train	B61L 3/06
Polymerisation initiated by wave energy or particle radiation; in addition polymers	C08F 2/46 C08F 2/54 C08G 2/02
Processes for treating or compounding macromolecular substances by wave energy or particle radiation	C08J 3/28
Chemical treatment or coating of shaped articles made of macromolecular substances using wave energy or particle radiation	C08J 7/18
Use of radiation for cracking of hydrocarbon oils	C10G 15/10, C10G 32/04
Use of radiation for reforming naphtha	C10G 35/16
Use of radiation for pasteurisation, sterilisation, preservation, purification, clarification or ageing of alcoholic beverages	C12H 1/06, C12H 1/16
Use of radiation for bleaching fibres, threads, yarns, fabrics, feathers, or made-up fibrous goods, leather or furs	D06L 3/04
Measuring angles, areas, length, thickness or similar dimensions, or irregularities of surfaces or contours, using wave or particle radiation	G01B 15/00
Transducers not specially adapted for a specific variable using	G01D 5/50

wave or particle radiation derived from a radioactive source	G01D 5/62
Investigating fluid tightness of structures using radioactive material	G01M 3/20
Investigating or analysing materials by the use of wave or particle radiation	G01N 23/00
Investigating or analysing materials through the ionisation of gases, using wave or particle radiation to ionise a gas	G01N 27/64
Chemical analysis of biological material; immunoassay or bio-specific binding assays involving radioactive-labelled substances	G01N 33/534 G01N 33/60
Geophysics; prospecting or detecting using primary nuclear radiation sources	G01V 5/08
Fire alarms or alarms responsive to explosion, actuated by the presence of smoke or gas detected by an ionisation chamber	G08B 17/11
Carrying off electrostatic charges by means of ionising radiation	H05F 3/06

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

None

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Preservation of cream, butter and cheese	A23C 13/08 A23C 15/18 A23C 19/097
Preparations containing radioactive substances for use in therapy or testing in vivo	A61K 51/00
Introduction of isotopes of elements into organic compounds	C07B 59/00
Photoelectric discharge tubes not involving the ionization of a gas	H01J 40/00
Discharge tubes functioning as thermionic generators	H01J 45/00
Tubes for determining the presence, intensity, density or energy of radiation or particles	H01J 47/00
Particle spectrometer ion sources or ion guns using particle bombardment, e.g. ionisation chambers	H01J 49/14
Semiconductor devices sensitive to electromagnetic or corpuscular radiation	H01L 31/00
Thermoelectric devices comprising junction of dissimilar materials	H01L 35/00
Lasers	H01S 3/00

Special rules of classification within this subclass

None.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

None.

Synonyms and Keywords

None.

IPC/D 192
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 08.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **G21K**
RAPPORTEUR : **GB**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	10.09.2008
3	Comments	Observations	CA	09.10.2008
4	Comments	Observations	US	03.12.2008
5	Comments	Observations	JP	19.01.2009
6	Comments	Observations	CA	30.01.2009
7	Comments	Observations	EP	25.03.2009
8	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	GB	31.03.2009
9	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	21.05.2009
10	Comments	Observations	CA	28.05.2009
11	Comments	Observations	US	02.06.2009
12	Comments	Observations	JP	04.06.2009
13	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	GB	04.06.2009

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project GB Rapporteur Proposal	Project: D192 Class/subclass: G21K Date : 08/06/2009

Title – G21K
Techniques for handling particles or ionising radiation not otherwise provided for;
Irradiation devices,
Gamma- or X-ray microscopes.

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Arrangements for handling radiation or particles, e.g. focusing or moderating
Radiation filters, e.g. X-ray filters
Conversion screens for the conversion of the spatial distribution of X-rays or particle radiation into visible images, e.g. fluoroscopic screens
Irradiation devices
Gamma- or X-ray microscopes

Relationship between large subject matter areas

None

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Investigating or analysing materials by the use of wave or particle radiation, e.g. X-rays or neutrons	G01N 23/00

Examples of places where the subject matter of this subclass is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

None

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Adaptations of reactors to facilitate experimentation or irradiation	G21C 23/00
Electron-optical arrangements in cathode ray tubes or electron beam tubes	H01J 29/46
Discharge tubes with provision for emergence of electrons or ions from the vessel; Lenard tubes	H01J 33/00

Discharge tubes with provision for introducing objects or material to be exposed to the discharge, e.g. for the purpose of examination or processing thereof	H01J 37/00
Electron or ion microscopes with scanning beams	H01J 37/28
Production or acceleration of neutral particle beams, e.g. molecular or atomic beams	H05H 3/00
Direct voltage accelerators; accelerators using single pulses	H05H 5/00
Targets for producing nuclear reactions	H05H 6/00
Details of linear accelerators, magnetic induction accelerators, cyclotrons and magnetic resonance accelerators	H05H 7/00
Linear accelerators	H05H 9/00
Magnetic induction accelerators, e.g. betatrons	H05H 11/00
Magnetic resonance accelerators; Cyclotrons	H05H 13/00
Methods or devices for acceleration of charged particles not otherwise provided for	H05H 15/00

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Scanning probe techniques or apparatus; applications of scanning probe techniques, e.g. scanning probe microscopy	G01Q
Photographic processes using X-rays; using screens to intensify X-ray images	G03C 5/16, G03C 5/17
In discharge tubes: screens on or from which an image or pattern is formed; luminescent screens	H01J 1/54, H01J 1/62
In cathode ray tubes or electron bean tubes: image conversion tubes or image amplification tubes having an X-ray input and an optical output	H01J 31/50
X-ray apparatus involving X-ray tubes; circuits therefor	H05G 1/00
Apparatus or processes specially adapted for producing X-rays, not involving X-ray tubes, e.g. involving generation of plasma	H05G 2/00
Generating plasma; handling plasma	H05H 1/00

Special rules of classification within this subclass

None.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms or expressions are used with the meaning indicated:

Ionising radiation	Ionising radiation consists of particles or electromagnetic waves that are sufficiently energetic to detach electrons from atoms or molecules, thus ionising them.

Synonyms and Keywords

None.

IPC/D 193
ORIGINAL: English/French
DATE: 08.06.2009

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
ORGANISATION MONDIALE DE LA PROPRIÉTÉ INTELLECTUELLE

GENEVA/GENÈVE

COMMITTEE OF EXPERTS OF THE IPC UNION
COMITÉ D'EXPERTS DE L'UNION DE L'IPC

DEFINITION PROJECT FILE
DOSSIER DE PROJET DÉFINITION

PROPOSAL BY : **PROPOSITION DE :**	**IPC AREA:** **DOMAINE DE LA CIB :** **H04J**
RAPPORTEUR : **NO**	**TECHNICAL FIELD :** **DOMAINE TECHNIQUE :** **E**

ANNEX/ ANNEXE	CONTENT/CONTENU		ORIGIN/ ORIGINE	DATE
1	Working Group decision	Décision du groupe de travail	IB	07.03.2008
2	Initial Proposal	Proposition Initiale	NO	07.05.2008
3	Comments	Observations	DE	25.06.2008
4	Comments	Observations	US	30.07.2008
5	Comments	Observations	EP	22.09.2008
6	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	NO	31.10.2008
7	Rapporteur proposal	Proposition du rapporteur	NO	31.10.2008
8	Comments	Observations	JP	13.11.2008
9	Comments	Observations	EP	13.02.2009
10	Rapporteur report	Rapport du rapporteur	NO	28.05.2009
11	Proposal removal of non-limiting references	Proposition de suppression de renvois non limitatifs	NO	28.05.2009

IPC Revision WG – Definition Project NO Rapporteur Proposal	Project: D193 Subclass: H04J Date : 13/11/08

Title - H04J

Multiplex communication

Definition statement

This subclass covers:

Multiplex Communication having circuits or apparatus for combining or dividing signals for the purpose of transmitting the signals simultaneously or sequentially over the same transmission path, and monitoring arrangements therefor.

Relationship between large subject matter areas

Class H04 Electric communication technique covers electrical communication systems with propagation paths employing beams of corpuscular radiation, acoustic waves or electromagnetic waves. Subclass H04J refers to multiplex communication in general. If the multiplex communication is specially adapted for particular applications classification is made in other subclasses of class H04.

References relevant to classification in this subclass

This subclass does not cover:

Optical monitoring arrangements, independent of the multiplexing method	H04B 10/08
Selecting arrangements for multiplex systems	H04Q 11/00

javascript:jump('e20080401;a20080401;c20060101','H04S','xml')javascript:jump('e20080401;a20080401;c20060101','H04Q0011000000','xml')javascript:jump('e20080401;a20080401;c20060101','H04N0007080000','xml')javascript:jump('e20080401;a20080401;c20060101','H04L0005000000','xml')javascript:jump('e20080401;a20080401;c20060101','H04B','xml')

Examples of places where the subject matter of this class is covered when specially adapted, used for a particular purpose, or incorporated in a larger system:

Use of multiplexing in transmission systems for measured values, control or similar signals	G08C15/00
Arrangements for transmission of digital information affording multiple use of the transmission path	H04L 5/00

Systems for the simultaneous or sequential transmission of more than one television signal	H04N 7/08

Places in relation to which this subclass is residual:

Informative references

Attention is drawn to the following places, which may be of interest for search:

Optical elements, systems or apparatus	G02B
Addressing or transmission in computers	G06F12/00, 13/00
Electronic switching or gating	H03K 17/00
Transmission in general	H04B
Relay systems	H04B 7/14
Broadcast communication	H04H
Data switching networks	H04L 12/00
Modulated-carrier systems	H04L 27/00
Telephonic Communication	H04M
Stereophonic systems	H04S
Wireless communication networks	H04W

Special rules of classification within this subclass

NONE.

Glossary of terms

In this subclass, the following terms (or expressions) are used with the meaning indicated:

Synonyms and Keywords

In patent documents the following abbreviations are often used:

In patent documents the following expressions/words "---", "---" and "---" are often used as synonyms.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used instead of "---" which is used in the classification scheme of this subclass.

In patent documents the expression/word "---" is often used with the meaning "---"

JAPAN PATENT OFFICE

November 13, 2008

Project: D193 Subclass: H04J

JP Comment

JP thanks NO Rapporteur for the revised proposal with report (Annex 6 and 7).

JP agrees with the Rapporteur report (Annex 6 and 7) basically.
In the final paragraph of the report, Rapporteur justly expressed her/his preference not “to expand the subclass definition to group level.” If that were the real intention of Para 3. in the EP comment, JP would oppose against taking such a course of proceedings too. Our objection is based on the fact that the very classification schemes on various group level under H04J have been the subject of discussion in Trilateral Classification Revision projects that are currently on-going (e.g. T067, T072).

[END]

Principal Directorate Patent Grant Automation - Directorate Classification		
Project: **D193**	Subject: Multiplex Communication	Subclass: H04J
EP Comments		13-02-2009

Ref.: R proposal (annex 07) and comments of JP (annex 08)

EP thanks the Rapporteur for the Definition-proposal and likes to hereby note that EP approves the proposal of annex 07.

JP correctly pointed out in annex 8 that the very classification schemes on various group levels under H04J are being the subject of discussion in ongoing Trilateral Classification Revision projects (e.g. T067, T072).
EP therefore, agrees with the Rapporteur (Annex 6 and 7) and JP at this stage not “to expand the subclass definition to group level”, and as such EP supports the present proposal.
Since EP still considers it to be beneficial to have a more extended statement, EP would like to express its hope that in the future a more extended statement might result from said trilateral projects.

RdB

ANNEX 10

Norwegian Industrial Porperty Office		
Project: **D193**	Subject: Multiplex Communication	Subclass: H04J
Rapporteur report		19-05-2009

The rapporteur proposal of 2008.10.31 has received approval from JP, GB, US and EP.
JP and EP have pointed out the ongoing Trilateral projects, T067 and T072, that have been in trilateral phase for the last two years.
Since there have been four approvals of the latest proposal in this definition project, Rapporteur suggests to go ahead with this definition project rather that waiting for the Trilateral projects to enter IPC-phase.

Line M Nicolayssen

ANNEX 11

Project Number: D 193 Rapporteur: Norway

Task: Removal of Informative references from the scheme

Table of references in subclass H04J
References according to Version 2009.0

Subclass: H04J Project: D 193

Place	Reference to	Category	Proposed action	Comments
H04J	H04B	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions.	
H04J	H04L 5/00	Limiting	None	
H04J	H04N 7/08	Limiting	None	
H04J	H04Q 11/00	Limiting	None	
H04J	H04S	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions.	
H04J 1/00	H04J 14/00	Limiting	None	
H04J 1/18	H04J 1/02	Limiting	None	
H04J 1/20	H04J 1/02	Limiting	None	
H04J 3/00	H04J 14/00	Limiting	None	
H04J 3/00	H04B 7/14	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions.	
H04J 3/00	H04Q	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions.	
H04J 3/02	H03K 17/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions.	
H04J 3/16	H04J 3/17	Limiting	None	
H04J 3/16	H04J 3/23	Limiting	None	
H04J 3/24	H04J 3/17	Limiting	None	
H04J 3/24	G06F 12/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions.	
H04J 3/24	G06F 13/00	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions.	
H04J 4/00	H04J 13/00	Limiting	None	
H04J 11/00	H04J 13/00	Limiting	None	
H04J 14/00	G02B	Informative	Remove from the scheme and add to subclass definitions.	